# PASTOR
## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TITLE:</th>
<th>PAGE NUMBERS:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TABLE OF CONTENTS</td>
<td>1-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FORWARD</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INTRODUCTION</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUTHOR’S STATEMENT</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I. PASTOR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. THE DEFINITION OF THE TERM PASTOR</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. THE CALL OF THE PASTOR</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. THE OFFICE OF THE PASTOR</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. THE WORK OF THE PASTOR</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E. FEED THE FLOCK</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. TEACH AND PREACH JESUS</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. AN EVANGELISTIC HEART</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H. WARNINGS ABOUT THE TRANSGRESSION OF PASTORS</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II. PRIEST</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. THE DEFINITION OF THE TERM PRIEST</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. THE CALL OF THE PRIEST</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. THE OFFICE OF THE PRIEST</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. JESUS OUR EXAMPLE</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E. THE UNECHANGEABLE PRIESTHOOD</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. CLOTHED WITH RIGHTEOUSNESS</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. CLOTHED WITH SALVATION</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H. THE WORK OF THE PRIEST</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I. THE GLORY OF THE LORD</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J. THE GOOD SAMARITAN</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K. FALSELY APPOINTED PRIESTS</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L. THE MISUSE OF ALCOHOL</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M. FALLEN PRIESTS</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. CURSES</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O. THE RESTORATION OF FALLEN PRIESTS</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. THE FAITHFUL PRIESTS</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q. KINGS AND PRIESTS</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III. SHEPHERD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. THE DEFINITION OF THE TERM SHEPHERD</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. JESUS OUR EXAMPLE</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. THE GOOD SHEPHERD</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. THE OLD TESTAMENT EXAMPLES OF JESUS AS A SHEPHERD</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E. THE LORD IS MY SHEPHERD</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. FEED THE FLOCK</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. HAVE COMPASSION</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. OUR EXAMPLE OF HAVING COMPASSION</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. THE SHEPHERD’S COMPASSION</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. FINALLY</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
VIII. PRACTICAL PERSONAL MATTERS

A. THE PASTOR'S SALARY

B. THE PASTOR'S TITHES AND OFFERINGS

C. THE PASTOR'S HOUSING

IX. FAMILY MATTERS

A. THE MEANING OF THE WORD FAMILY

B. THE FAMILY

C. FAMILY TIME

D. SEX IN MARRIAGE

E. THE HUSBAND AND FATHER IN ORDER

1. HUSBANDS

2. FATHERS

F. THE WIFE AND MOTHER IN ORDER

1. WIVES

2. MOTHERS

G. PARENTS

H. CHILDREN

I. GRANDCHILDREN

J. ORPHANS

K. STRANGE CHILDREN

L. THE UNMARRIED

1. VIRGINS

2. DIVORCED

3. WIDOWS AND WIDOWERS

M. FINALLY

X. PERSONAL CONDUCT

A. PROPER SPEECH (LANGUAGE)

B. ALCOHOL

C. DRUGS

D. SMOKING

E. PORNOGRAPHY

F. GAMBLING AND ACCEPTING GIFTS (BRIBES)

G. PRIDE

1. WHAT IS PRIDE

2. PRIDE IN THE OLD TESTAMENT

3. PRIDE IN THE NEW TESTAMENT

H. FINALLY

XI. FALSE PASTORS

A. CURSED PASTORS

1. THOSE THAT DO THE WORK OF THE LORD DECEITFULLY

2. THOSE THAT TRUST IN MAN AND THE FLESH

3. THOSE THAT PREACH ANOTHER GOSPEL

4. THOSE THAT ARE FOLLOWERS OF THE LAW

5. THE RESULTS

B. FALSE GIFTS

C. THE GREAT IMITATORS

D. THE FALLEN AWAY

PRE-COMCLUSION

CONCLUSION

BIBLIOGRAPHY
PASTOR

THE PASTORAL CALL OF GOD IN THE LAST DAYS

FORWARD:
This “Book” has been written by Timothy II with the direction and inspiration of the Holy Spirit in order to reach those of you that have been or will be “Pastors”, or for those of you that just want to know more about what a “Pastor” is according to God’s plan as stated in the Holy Bible.

1. For you “Pastors” that are ‘Secure’ in the Lord: This “Book” is to help those of you “Pastors” that are ‘Secure’ in the Lord to confirm what you already know, and to possibly provide you with some new insights in the role of your Office. It is also to provide you with some cautions and/or warnings to help protect you from the ‘fiery darts’ of the Devil. The ‘fiery darts’ of the Devil are the missiles that the Devil will continually fire at you in order to inflame you with anger, grief and/or lust! (Ephesians 6:11 6:16 James 4:7 1 Peter 5:8-9)

2. For you “Pastors” that are ‘Older’ in the Lord: This “Book” will hopefully remind you ‘Older’ “Pastors” in the Lord how you started out in your Ministry and will help to restore, reignite, excite and regenerate those of you that have been “Pastoring” for many years and who may be going through burnout, boredom, laziness, exhaustion, and/or are just plain tired. (Psalm 37:25 71:9 71:18 92:13-14 Proverbs 20:29 2 Timothy 1:6-7)

3. For you “Pastors” that are ‘Younger’ in the Lord: This “Book” is to help strengthen those of you ‘Younger’ “Pastors” in the Lord and to confirm and establish you. It is also to help you to grow, and to improve your knowledge of what a “Pastor” is, and should be, according to the Bible. (1 Timothy 3:6 1 Peter 5:5-6)

4. For you “Pastors” that are ‘Unsure’ about your Call: This “Book” is to help those of you “Pastors” that are ‘Unsure’ about your Call and to clarify without a doubt that God has or has not Called you. It is also hoped that once you receive the answer to this question you will make the correct decision that God would have you to make. (Romans 11:29 12:7 Ephesians 4:8 James 1:5-8)

5. For you “Pastors” that ‘Know’ you are not Called: This “Book” is for those of you “Pastors” that ‘Know’ that you are not Called, and to help you to make the right decision on your future. This decision may consist of whether to move to another ‘Office’ such as an “Evangelist”, or to remove yourself and move into another area of ‘Ministry’ that God has actually Called you to do. (1 Corinthians 12:28-29 Matthew 15:13-14)

6. For other ‘Christian Leaders’ in the “Body of Christ”: This “Book” is for other ‘Christian Leaders’ in the “Body of Christ” to help you to learn more about the “Pastor, and to understand and to appreciate what the actual role of the “Pastor” consists of according to the Holy Bible. (Ephesians 4:11-12 1 Corinthians 12:12-27)
INTRODUCTION:
According to the Bible, a “Pastor” is a person that has been Called by Jesus Christ. (Ephesians 4:8, 4:11) That Call consists of teaching, feeding and guiding a group of people known as a ‘Flock’.
(1 Peter 5:2  Acts 20:28  John 21:15-17)

Once you have been Called as a “Pastor”, it is important that you possess the following desirable qualities and/or traits. If you do not have them, you need to pray and to ask God for them.

A “Pastors” Heart:
A “Pastors” Heart is one that is filled with great ‘Love’. According to the Dictionary ‘Love’ is a strong affection for another arising out of kinship or personal ties; an affection based on admiration, benevolence, or common interests; a warm attachment, enthusiasm, or devotion; an unselfish loyal and benevolent concern for the good of another; or a person's adoration of God.
A “Pastors” Heart is also one that has a great ‘Compassion’ for all people. According to the Dictionary ‘Compassion’ is a sympathetic consciousness of others' distress together with a desire to alleviate it.
(Matthew 20:34  Mark 1:41  5:19  Hebrews 5:2  1 John 3:17  Jude 22  1 Peter 3:8)

A “Pastors” Patience:
A “Pastor” has a great need for ‘Patience’. According to the Dictionary ‘Patience’ is the capacity, habit, or fact of being ‘Patient’. To be ‘Patient’ means to bear pains or trials calmly or without complaint; to manifest forbearance under provocation or strain; to not be hasty or impetuous; to be steadfast despite opposition, difficulty, or adversity; and to be able or willing to bear.
(2 Corinthians 6:4  Colossians 1:11  1 Thessalonians 1:3  Hebrews 10:36  12:1  James 1:4)

A “Pastors” Leadership:
As a “Pastor” you must have a Capacity for ‘Leadership’. According to the Dictionary ‘Leadership’ is the office or position of a ‘Leader’, a capacity to Lead, or the act or an instance of Leading. Also according to the Dictionary a ‘Leader’ is a person who Leads, one that takes the Lead or initiative, someone that ranks first, or a person who has commanding authority or influence. (Isaiah 55:4)

As a “Pastor” you not only need to ‘Lead’ your ‘Flock’ but you also need to Lead your Staff. Your ‘Leadership’ must help create a bond of friendship and form a great loyalty between you the “Pastor” and your Staff. If you do, the results will be that you will stick together as a Team no matter what happens to you or your Church whether it is good or bad. (Ephesians 4:1-4)

I personally have always admired “Pastors” because I know that just as I did as a Head Football Coach, you must commit to a great sacrifice of your time and effort. This is because after God and your Family, running a Church requires your constant attention. (Romans 12:1)

Potential “Pastors”:
Many potential “Pastors” start out as graduates from a University or College and to gain experience they move on into an established Church as an ‘Assistant’ or ‘Associate’ “Pastor”.
There is nothing wrong with this approach; however, the most important part of this situation is that these ‘potential’ “Pastors” need to know whether or not they have been Called by Jesus Christ.
This situation could be improved upon if this is actually done before they enter College so as not to waste time in their preparation for the Ministry!

You may ask: How do I know if I have been Called to be a “Pastor”? How do I find out how to receive that Calling?
The answer to both of these questions is for you to go to those who have ‘Spiritual Authority’ over you and have them lay hands on you, pray over you, ‘anoint’ you with ‘Holy Anointing Oil’, and ask God what He has Called you to do or to be for His Kingdom!  (Exodus 29:7  40:15  1 John 2:27)

After potential “Pastors” have gained some experience as an Assistant or Associate, many will take over a Church that has already been established. Others will start out by forming a new Church. These new Churches will sometimes evolve as the result of Evangelistic Outreaches, and/or from House Churches or Bible Study Groups that they have formed. All these methods are fine, but just remember that it is God who forms the Church - not man!

Today some potential “Pastors” seek a Church by drawing attention to themselves at seminars, or by advertising themselves on TV or the internet, etc.  This is usually not of God!!  God will open the door for you when it is time for you to become a Senior “Pastor”.  (Proverbs 3:5-6) Remember, a ‘True Flock’ of God does not come to fruition through man’s methods, but is given to a “Pastor” by God.  (Acts 2:47)

The role of the “Pastor”:
The role of the “Pastor” in these last days is of great importance to God.  That is why it is so important for all ‘Christian Leaders’ to understand what the role of the “Pastor” is today. In these last days, God is looking to get His Church in Order before His soon Coming, and it is the responsibility of the “Pastors” to begin to put Order in the House of God.  (1 Peter 4:17  Revelation 19:7)

As you read this “Book”, please pray and seek the Lord in all its meanings and how this “Book” might manifest to you what God’s Will is for you concerning the “Pastor”!

AUTHOR’S STATEMENT:
Please Note that there are several terms in the Bible that are used synonymously for the Name and/or Work of the “Pastor”.

These terms are:
1. Pastor
2. Priest
3. Shepherd
4. Minister
5. Angel

For this reason, this “Book” will include an explanation of all five of these terms to help clarify all that the Bible has to say about the Office, the Role and the Work of the “Pastor”.
I. PASTOR:
The term “Pastor” as mentioned in Ephesians 4:11 is the main topic of this “Book”. The term “Pastor” or “Pastors” is only used 8 times in the KJV of the Old Testament and 1 time in the KJV of the New Testament. Therefore, to get a better understanding, it is important to define the term “Pastor” and its relative meanings in English, Hebrew and Greek.

A. THE DEFINITION OF THE TERM PASTOR:
The following is what the Dictionary states are the meanings for the word “Pastor” in English. Of course these meanings may not all be Biblically accurate and are added only for your information.

Definition in the Dictionary:

PASTOR
1. A Christian Minister or Priest in charge of a Congregation.
2. A Minister or Priest in charge of a Church.
3. A Spiritual Overseer; especially: a Clergyman serving a local Church or Parish.
4. A person having Spiritual care of a number of persons.
5. To act as Pastor for a Church or Congregation.

The following are the definitions for the word “Pastor” in Hebrew which is in the Old Testament and in Greek which is in the New Testament.

Definition in Hebrew:

OT:7462 ra`ah (raw-aw'); a primitive root; to tend a flock; i.e. pasture it; intransitively, to graze (literally or figuratively); generally to rule; by extension, to associate with (as a friend):
KJV - break, companion, keep company with, devour, eat up, evil entreat, feed, use as a friend, make friendship with, herdmman, keep [sheeper]-), pastor, shearing house, shepherd, wander, waste.

Definition in Greek:

NT:4166 poimen (poy-mane'); of uncertain affinity; a shepherd (literally or figuratively):
KJV - shepherd, pastor.

B. THE CALL OF THE PASTOR:
It is God that Calls “Pastors”. Here in the Old Testament the Lord states that He will give His people (the Jews) “Pastors” according to His own Heart! This is most likely a prophecy that in the coming Millennium, God will give the remnant of backslidden Israel “Pastors”.
This is an interesting Scripture because here in the Old Testament it uses the term “Pastors” and not “Priests”. The point here however is that God Calls “Pastors” according to His Heart!

Jer 3:14-15
14 Turn (return), O backsliding children, saith the LORD; for I am married unto you; and I will take you one of a city, and two of a family, and I will bring you to Zion:
15 And I will give you pastors (7462) according to mine heart,...
Here in the New Testament when Jesus Christ ascended up to Heaven He gave the Five ‘Doma Gifts’ of ‘Christian Leadership’ to ‘human beings’, which includes the Call of “Pastors”.

(Read the Book “Christian Leadership” written by Timothy II)

Eph 4:8
8 Wherefore he saith, When he ascended up on high, he led captivity captive, and gave (Doma) gifts unto men (human beings).

C. THE OFFICE OF THE PASTOR:
The Five ‘Doma Gifts’ that Jesus has given to ‘human beings’ are actually Five Offices. The Forth ‘Doma Gift’ that Jesus has given to ‘human beings’ is that of the Office of a “Pastor”.

Eph 4:11
11 And he (Jesus) gave some, apostles; and some, prophets; and some, evangelists; and some, pastors (4166) and teachers:

These Offices or Callings of God are not for everyone but are only given to some that Jesus Christ has Called. (1 Corinthians 12:29)

Rom 12:4
4 For as we have many members in one body, and all members have not the same office:

D. THE WORK OF THE PASTOR:
As a part of the ‘Five Fold Ministry’, the “Pastor” is to share in the Ministry of:

- **The perfecting of the Saints:**
  “Pastors” are to help Perfect the Saints. This means that you are to help thoroughly equip, to completely furnish, to prepare, to complete thoroughly, to perfectly join together, to mend, to adjust, to repair and to restore those Saints that God has put in your Church! These Saints are those that have been made sacred, pure, morally blameless, consecrated and most Holy through the Blood of Jesus Christ. (1 John 1:7) (Read the Study Guide “The Saints” by Timothy II)

- **For the work of the Ministry:**
  “Pastors” are to help prepare the Saints in their Church to do the Work of the Ministry no matter how, when, and where they are Called. This Work includes the act, the doing, the deeds, the labor, the toil, the effort and/or the occupation that is involved with their Call to the Ministry. The Ministry here that the “Pastors” are to prepare their Saints for is that of an attendant, a servant, an aid, or for an official service such as a Christian Teacher, a Minister, a Deacon, a Deaconess, an Administrator, a “Pastor” or any Office.

- **For the Edifying of the body of Christ**
  “Pastors” are also to help Edify which means to build up, to construct, to structure, to confirm, and to embolden (which is to instill with boldness or courage) those in their Congregation, so that they can become as one within all of the “Body of Christ”. (1 Corinthians 12:12-13 12:20)

Eph 4:12-16
12 For the perfecting of the saints, for the work of the ministry, for the edifying of the body of Christ:

The Work of the “Pastor” is to continue Until we all come into the Unity (oneness or unanimity which is the quality or state of being unanimous) of the Faith, and of the knowledge (recognition or full discernment) of the Son of God, unto a perfect (complete or of full age in growth and mental and moral character) man, unto the measure (degree) of the stature (maturity) of the fullness of Christ. (Colossians 1:19   2:9)

13 Till (until) we all come in the unity of the faith, and of the knowledge of the Son of God, unto a perfect man, unto the measure of the stature of the fulness of Christ:

This is so that the ‘Flock’ will no more be like children (babes or immature Christians) that are carried away with every wind of Doctrine by the sleight (deceitful craftiness) of men that are waiting to deceive them.

14 That we henceforth be no more children, tossed to and fro, and carried about with every wind of doctrine, by the sleight of men, and cunning craftiness, whereby they lie in wait to deceive:

Instead they will learn to speak the truth (in doctrine and profession) in Love and will grow up into Christ which is the Head of the Body. (Ephesians 1:22-23   Colossians 1:18)

15 But speaking the truth in love, may grow up into him in all things, which is the head, even Christ:

From whom the whole Body is fitly joined together (closely jointed together or organized compactly) to the effectual working (effective or powerful working) of every part so that it makes an increase of the body (or causes the body to grow up) unto the edifying of itself in Love. (Colossians 3:14-15)

16 From whom the whole body fitly joined together and compacted by that which every joint supplieth, according to the effectual working in the measure of every part, maketh increase of the body unto the edifying of itself in love.

E. FEED THE FLOCK:
As a “Pastor” you are to ‘Feed the Flock’ that God has given you.
The following are explanations and interpretations of the terms ‘Feed’ and ‘Lambs’ and ‘Sheep’ that Jesus used in His Call to Peter as a “Pastor”.

• To Feed: (1006) - ‘bosko’ in the Greek means:
  To pasture: which means to feed livestock.
  To fodder: which is something fed to domestic animals such as Sheep. It can also mean an inferior or readily available material used to supply a heavy demand. This could be a warning not to use inferior or readily available sermon materials when you have a heavy demand from a large following.
  To graze: which is to feed on growing herbage or to eat small portions of food throughout the day.
  To keep: is to keep an eye on, take care of, to watch over and defend, to be faithful to, to maintain in a good, fitting, or orderly condition, to continue to maintain, to maintain a course, direction, or progress.
• **My Lambs:** (721) - ‘arnion’ in the Greek means:
  To be diminutive: which is small or little.
  Or a lambkin: which is a small lamb.

• **To Feed:** (4165) - ‘poimaino’ in the Greek means:
  To Feed: as a Shepherd.
  To Tend: is to pay attention to, to attend as a servant, to apply oneself to take care of and watch over, to have or take charge of as a caretaker or an overseer.
  To Rule: ‘poimaino’ in the Greek also means to rule, which is to keep straight or to direct.

• **My Sheep:** (4263) - ‘probaton’ in the Greek means:
  Sheep: (literally or figuratively), which is a timid defenseless creature or a timid or docile person, especially one easily influenced or led.
  Sheepfold: ‘probaton’ in the Greek also means sheepfold which is a pen or shelter for sheep.

Here Jesus ordains Peter as a “Pastor” to ‘Feed His Flock’. Notice He used different terminology when He said Feed My Lambs and Feed My Sheep!

**John 21:14-17**

14 *This is now the third time that Jesus shewed himself to his disciples, after that he was risen from the dead.*
15 So when they had dined, Jesus saith to Simon Peter, Simon, son of Jonas, lovest thou me more than these? He saith unto him, Yea, Lord; thou knowest that I love thee. He saith unto him, Feed (1006) *my lambs* (721).
16 He saith to him again the second time, Simon, son of Jonas, lovest thou me? He saith unto him, Yea, Lord; thou knowest that I love thee. He saith unto him, Feed (4165) *my sheep* (4263).
17 He saith unto him the third time, Simon, son of Jonas, lovest thou me? Peter was grieved because he said unto him the third time, Lovest thou me? And he said unto him, Lord, thou knowest all things; thou knowest that I love thee. Jesus saith unto him, Feed (1006) *my sheep* (4263).

---

**Here in this Painting is:**

(Christ's Charge to Peter by Raphael, 1515.
In telling Peter to shepherd his sheep, Christ was appointing him as a Pastor.)
‘Feeding the Flock’ of God should not be done by necessity nor for the money, but of a ready and willing mind. Ready and willing can also mean with ‘alacrity’ which means with promptness in response and cheerful readiness.

1 Peter 5:2
2 Feed (tend as a Shepherd or Pastor) the flock (group of believers) of God which is among you, taking the oversight (to oversee or to look diligently) thereof, not by constraint (or necessity), but willingly; not for filthy lucre (sordid gain nor for greed of), but of a ready (ready and willing) mind;

As a “Pastor” you must be diverse in your ‘Feeding of the Flock’ of God because the ‘Flock’ includes those that are beginning Christians, those in-between and those that are the more mature Christians. A good point to remember is to ‘know your audience’! A Professional Football Coach would have a hard time speaking to a Pop Warner Football Team made up of young boys so that they would understand him. Therefore, if you ‘know your audience’ you will know how to relate to them so that they will understand you.

1 Cor 3:1-3
1 And I, brethren, could not speak unto you as unto spiritual (divinely supernatural), but as unto carnal (fleshly), even as unto babes (infants, childish or immature Christians) in Christ.
2 I have fed you with milk, and not with meat: for hitherto (as yet) ye were not able to bear it, neither yet now are ye able.
3 For ye are yet carnal (fleshly): for whereas there is among you envying (jealousy), and strife (contention), and divisions, are ye not carnal, and walk as men?

Also, remember that the members of your ‘Flock’ will not grow at the same rate.

Heb 5:12-14
12 For when for the time ye ought to be teachers, ye have need that one teach you again which be the first principles (orderly in arrangement, elements) of the oracles (utterances) of God; and are become such as have need of milk, and not of strong meat.
13 For every one that useth milk is unskilful in the word of righteousness (character especially Christian justification): for he is a babe (infant, childish or immature Christian).

Hopefully most members of the ‘Flock’ will grow into full age and due to their use, their senses will give them the ability to discern the difference between both good and evil. (Psalm 34:14 37:27 Proverbs 16:6 15:3 Romans 12:9 12:21)

14 But strong meat belongeth to them that are of full age (perfect, complete, grown in mental and moral character), even those who by reason of use have their senses (perception or judgment) exercised (trained) to discern both good and evil.

In Jeremiah it states that in the future the Lord will give the remnant of backsliding Israel “Pastors” that will Feed them with Knowledge and Understanding. Today it would behoove you as a “Pastor” to understand what is the ‘Spirit of Knowledge’ and the ‘Spirit of Understanding’, so that you can teach it to your ‘Flock’. (Isaiah 11:2)
(Read the Tract and the Book “The Seven Spirits of God” written by Timothy II)
And I will give you pastors (7462)…, which shall feed (paster -7462) you with knowledge and understanding.

According to the Dictionary, Knowledge is a clear perception of a truth, fact or subject. According to the Bible the ‘Fear of the Lord’ is the beginning of Knowledge, and Knowledge is the stability of our times. (Proverbs 2:3 2:5)

The fear of the Lord is the beginning of knowledge:

And wisdom and knowledge shall be the stability of thy times, and strength of salvation: the fear of the Lord is his treasure.

According to the Dictionary, Understanding is the faculty of reasoning, discernment, intelligence, mental power to perceive, and/or sympathetic. According to the Bible to ‘Depart from Evil’ and ‘Knowledge of the Holy’ is Understanding. (Proverbs 3:7 16:6)

...and to depart from evil is understanding.

...and the knowledge of the holy is understanding.

TEACH AND PREACH JESUS:
Here Peter and the other Apostles ‘Taught and Preached Jesus’ DAILY in the Temple and in their Houses. As a “Pastor” you also need to always ‘Teach and Preach Jesus’!

Acts 5:42
And daily in the temple, and in every house, they ceased not to teach and preach Jesus Christ.

Like Jeremiah, when you meditate before God are you able to say to God that you have stayed steadfast in your Office as a “Pastor”? Is everything that comes out of your lips always right before Him? Are you ‘Teaching and Preaching Jesus’ or are you Teaching and Preaching a ‘social gospel’ to satisfy itching ears and/or just to fill your Church with people?
If what you say and do is right before God, then even if you are reproached by man, you can be satisfied that you are doing your best for the Lord and that you are a Faithful Servant!

As for me, I have not hastened (hurried away or withdrawn) from being a pastor (7462) to follow thee: neither have I desired the woeful (desperately wicked) day; thou knowest: that which came out of my lips was right before thee.

AN EVANGELISTIC HEART:
“Pastors” have a “Pastor’s Heart” and “Evangelists” have an “Evangelistic Heart”. However, it seems in these last days, God is also giving “Pastors” an “Evangelistic Heart”.
This has caused some of today’s “Pastors” to be somewhat confused in their Call because they feel a need to ‘go out’. Some may even think that they are being Called into becoming an “Evangelist”. This is a possibility, but most likely God is giving “Pastors” an “Evangelistic Heart” so that they will feel the need to train and to send their ‘Flock’ out to their neighborhoods, the streets, the cities, and into the Mission fields.

There are also those in their ‘Flock’ that have been Called by God to become “Evangelists”. These are usually the younger members in the Church that need to be trained up and sent out to help lead the ‘Flock’ out, and not the “Pastor”!

In these last days, God is telling “The Body of Christ” to Go Out! (Matthew 28:19 Mark 16:15)

**Num 27:16-17**

16 Let the LORD, the God of the spirits of all flesh, set a man over the congregation,
17 Which may go out before them, and which may go in before them, and which may lead them out, and which may bring them in; that the congregation of the LORD be not as sheep which have no shepherd.

*Note that as a “Pastor” you may ‘go out’ and lead the ‘Flock’ out for a short term, such as a short term Mission trip or taking a trip to Israel. However, you must ‘always’ return shortly. You cannot ‘remain’ out or the Church will be as a ‘Flock’ without a “Shepherd”.

**H. WARNINGS ABOUT THE TRANSGRESSION OF PASTORS:**
The following Warnings are about “Pastors” in the Old Testament. However, these Warnings are also valid for today’s “Pastors”. (2 Timothy 3:1-8)

The following Scripture contains warnings to the “Priests” that did not continue to seek the Lord and to the “Pastors” that transgressed and broke away from the just authority of Jeremiah.

**Jer 2:8**

8 The priests said not, Where is the LORD? and they that handle the law knew me not: the pastors (7462) also transgressed (offended, rebelled, revolted, apostatized; also means to break away from just authority) against me, and the prophets prophesied by Baal, and walked after things that do not profit.

Here the “Pastors” are accused of becoming brutish (foolish or stupid) because they too did not seek the Lord. The results were that they did not prosper and their ‘Flocks’ were scattered.

**Jer 10:21**

21 For the pastors (7462) are become brutish (foolish or stupid), and have not sought (to follow for pursuit or search, to ask or inquire, or to seek out) the LORD: therefore they shall not prosper, and all their flocks shall be scattered.

Even today, many “Pastors” have destroyed or ruined, corrupted, spoiled, and/or utterly wasted their vineyard (Church). They have trampled or polluted under their foot the portion that God has given them.

**Jer 12:10**
10 Many pastors (7462) have destroyed (ruined, corrupted, spoiled, and/or utterly wasted) my vineyard, they have trodden (trampled or polluted) my portion (allotment, field, or parcel) under foot, they have made my pleasant (precious) portion a desolate wilderness.

The following are warnings to those “Pastors” that are ‘out of order’ that they shall be caused to wander and they will be ashamed and confused due to their wickedness.

Jer 22:22
22 The wind (Spirit of God) shall eat up (cause) all thy pastors (7462) (to wander), and thy lovers (friends) shall go into captivity: surely then shalt thou be ashamed and confounded (confused) for all thy wickedness.

Those “Pastors” that destroy (wander away) and scatter the ‘Sheep’ of God’s Pasture and that have not ‘overseen’ or cared for them will be punished saith the Lord!

Jer 23:1-2
1 Woe be unto the pastors (7462) that destroy (wander away) and scatter the sheep of my pasture! saith the LORD.
2 Therefore thus saith the LORD God of Israel against the pastors (7462) that feed (tend the flock) my people; Ye have scattered my flock, and driven them away (pushed off, mislead, cast out or forced out), and have not visited (overseen, cared for or committed to) them: behold, I will visit (avenge or punish) upon you the evil of your doings, saith the LORD.

II. PRIEST:
There are “Priests” in many Denominations that may perform different types of duties according to their Denomination and/or Traditions; however, in this “Book” we are only concerned with the description of a “Priest’s” role as a “Pastor” as declared in the Scriptures.

A. THE DEFINITION OF THE TERM PRIEST:
The following is what the Dictionary states are the meanings for the word “Priest” in English. Of course these meanings may not all be Biblically accurate and are added only for your information.

Definition in the Dictionary:

PRIEST
1. A person ordained to the Sacerdotal or Pastoral Office; a member of the clergy; Minister.
2. An Ordained Minister, especially in the Roman Catholic, Anglican, or Eastern Orthodox Churches, responsible for Administering the Sacraments, preaching, and Ministering to the needs of the Congregation.
3. One authorized to perform the sacred rites of a religion especially as a mediatory agent between humans and God.
4. Specifically: an Anglican, Eastern Orthodox, or Roman Catholic clergyman ranking below a Bishop and above a Deacon.
5. A person whose Office it is to perform religious rites, and especially to make sacrificial
Offerings.
6. A member of the clergy of the order next below that of Bishop, authorized to carry out the Christian Ministry.
7. Somebody descended from the family of Aaron of the house of Levi, appointed as Priests in the Hebrew Scriptures.

Definition in Hebrew:

OT:3548 kohen (ko-hane'); active participle of OT:3547; literally, one officiating, a priest; also (by courtesy) an acting priest (although a layman):
KJV - chief ruler, own, priest, prince, principal officer.
OT:3547 kahan (kaw-han'); a primitive root, apparently meaning to mediate in religious services; but used only as denominative from OT:3548; to officiate as a priest; figuratively, to put on regalia:
KJV - deck, be (do the office of a, execute the, minister in the) priest ('s office).
OT:3550 kehunnah (keh-hoon-naw'); from OT:3547; priesthood:
KJV - priesthood, priest's office.

Definition in Greek:

NT:749 archiereus (ar-khee-er-yuce'); from NT:746 and NT:2409; the high-priest (literally, of the Jews, typically, Christ); by extension a chief priest:
KJV - chief (high) priest, chief of the priests.
NT:2409 hieres (hee-er-yooce'); from NT:2413; a priest (literally or figuratively):
KJV - (high) priest.
NT:2420 hierosune (hee-er-o-soo'-nay); from NT:2413; sacredness, i.e. (by implication) the priestly office:
KJV - priesthood.
NT:2407 hierateuo (hee-er-at-yoo-o); prolongation from NT:2409; to be a priest, i.e. perform his functions:
KJV - execute the priest's office.
NT:2405 hierateia (hee-er-at-i'-ah); from NT:2407; priestliness, i.e. the sacerdotal function:
KJV - office of the priesthood, priest's office.

B. THE CALL OF THE PRIEST:
A potential “Pastor/Priest” just as any other “Pastor” must be Called by God in order to properly minister in the ‘Office’ of the “Pastor”. (Ephesians 4:11)

Isa 61:6
6 But ye shall be named (called) the Priests (3548) of the LORD: men shall call you the Ministers (8334 sharath) of our God:…

This Calling should be clearly understood and received by the potential “Pastor/Priest” as it is a Calling that as it says in the Greek is ‘Called aloud’, or ‘Called forth’ by God, such as was Aaron.
(Exodus 28:1)

Heb 5:4
4 And no man taketh (obtains or receives) this honour (esteem) unto himself (of themselves), but he that is called (called aloud, bid, or called forth) of God, as was Aaron.

It is important and Biblically accurate that the potential “Pastor/Priest” is ‘Anointed’ with ‘Holy Anointing Oil’ prior to the taking of the ‘Office’, such as was Aaron and his sons. (Exodus 28:41)

Ex 40:13-15
13 And thou shalt put upon Aaron the holy garments, and anoint him, and sanctify (make clean, consecrate, keep Holy, and/or purify) him; that he may minister unto me in the priest's office (3547).
14 And thou shalt bring his sons, and clothe them with coats:
15 And thou shalt anoint (to rub with oil, by implication to consecrate, also to paint) them, as thou didst anoint their father, that they may minister unto me in the priest's office (3547): for their anointing (a consecratory gift) shall surely be an everlasting priesthood (3550) throughout their generations.

C. THE OFFICE OF THE PRIEST:
In both the Old and the New Testament the “Priest’s” role in the Church is that of an ‘Office’.

Ex 29:9
9 And thou shalt gird them with girdles (put on as a belt), Aaron and his sons, and put the bonnets (caps) on them: and the priest's office (3550) shall be theirs for a perpetual statute: and thou shalt consecrate (fully set) Aaron and his sons.

The following is an example in the New Testament of the “Priest” ‘Office’ held by Zacharias.

Luke 1:5-6
5 There was in the days of Herod, the king of Judaea, a certain priest (2409) named Zacharias, of the course (Priestly division) of Abia: and his wife was of the daughters of Aaron, and her name was Elisabeth.
6 And they were both righteous before God, walking in all the commandments and ordinances of the Lord blameless.

Luke 1:8-9
8 And it came to pass, that while he executed the priest’s office (2407) before God in the order of his course (service at the Temple),
9 According to the custom of the priest’s office (2405), his lot was (he was chosen by lot) to burn incense when he went into the temple of the Lord.

D. JESUS OUR EXAMPLE:
Jesus is our example of being a “High Priest” or Chief of the “Priests” through a Heavenly Calling. Potential “Pastors/Priests” must also become a “Pastor/Priest” through a Heavenly Calling. (Ephesians 4:8  4:11)

*Notice that the Calling of God is an ‘invitation’ and many times that ‘invitation’ is not heeded; thus many potential “Pastors/Priests” never become what God has Called them to be! There are also some people that try to answer the Call of God that are not Truly Called!
Since Jesus is the “High Priest” of our Profession (or acknowledgement) of that Call, if you are ‘out of order’ in the Call of God, you are actually being untrue to the Lord and you are deceiving yourself.

Heb 3:1
1 Wherefore, holy brethren, partakers of the heavenly (high) calling (invitation), consider the Apostle and High Priest (749) of our profession (acknowledgement), Christ Jesus;

Since Jesus Christ is our example of a “Priest”, particularly a “High Priest”, included are some of His “Priestly” Characteristics:
Here it is revealed that Jesus can be touched with the feeling of our infirmities. This means that Jesus does feel sympathy with or has compassion for our infirmities. Our infirmities can consist of feebleness of mind or body, or morally; also frailty, disease, sickness and weakness.
Since Jesus was tested in all these points and was yet without Sin, He is a great example that as a “Pastor/Priest” you should look up to and try to follow.

Heb 4:15
15 For we have not an high priest (749) which cannot be touched with the feeling of (to feel sympathy with, or have compassion with) our infirmities (feebleness of mind or body, or morally; frailty, disease, sickness and weakness); but was in all points tempted (tested) like as we are, yet without sin.

Because Jesus was made a “High Priest” by God the Father, He did not glorify (honor or magnify) Himself. Since you too have been made a “Pastor/Priest” by God, do not glorify yourself!

Heb 5:5
5 So also Christ glorified (honored or magnified) not himself to be made an high priest (749); but he that said unto him, Thou art my Son, today have I begotten thee.

Jesus as a “High Priest” who became fitting for us or right to us has these characteristics:
He is…
- Holy - which means of Divine character.
- Harmless - which means innocent and simple.
- Undefiled - which means unsoiled and pure.
- Separate from Sinners - which means set apart or put asunder from Sinners.
- Made Higher - which means esteemed higher in place and character than the Heavens.

As a “Pastor/Priest”, when you Minister to your ‘Flock’ (including all of the “Body of Christ”) you should do so with these same characteristics in mind.

Heb 7:26-27
26 For such an high priest (749) became (fitting for or right to) us, who is holy (of Divine character), harmless (innocent and simple), undefiled (unsoiled and pure), separate (set apart or put asunder) from sinners, and made higher (esteemed higher in place and character) than the heavens;

This is much easier to accomplish today as there is no longer any need to offer up a sacrifice for your Sins nor for your ‘Flock’s Sins because Jesus did this once and for all when He offered up Himself.
27 Who needeth not daily, as those high priests (749), to offer up sacrifice, first for his own sins, and then for the people's: for this he did once, when he offered up himself.

The Conclusion to Jesus being our example of a “Priest” is this: Jesus is our “High Priest” who is set at the right hand of the Heavenly Throne of God the Father. He is the Minister of the ‘True Church’ which the Lord set up and not man.

Heb 8:1-2
1 Now of the things which we have spoken this is the sum: We have such an high priest (749), who is set on the right hand of the throne of the Majesty (God Himself) in the heavens: 2 A minister of the sanctuary, and of the true tabernacle, which the Lord pitched (set up), and not man.

Jesus Christ is our “High Priest” of good things to come by a greater and more perfect tabernacle which has not been made or created with human hands.

Heb 9:11
11 But Christ being come an high priest (749) of good things to come, by a greater and more perfect tabernacle (habitation in Heaven), not made with hands, that is to say, not of this building (creation or created world);

It is through the ‘Blood of Christ’ which was shed when Jesus offered Himself without spot to God the Father, that has purged your conscience as a “Pastor/Priest” from ‘dead works’ (in effort and occupation) to Serve the Living God. This should also help you to never make your Serving the Lord as a “Pastor/Priest” seem a ‘Burden’. (Matthew 11:29-30)

Heb 9:14-15
14 How much more shall the blood of Christ, who through the eternal Spirit offered himself without spot to God, purge (cleanse or purify) your conscience (moral consciousness) from dead works (in effort and occupation) to serve the living God?

Never forget, JESUS is the ONLY Mediator (go between, reconciler, intercessor) of the New Testament (covenant). NOT MAN! (1Timothy 2:5)

15 And for this cause He is the mediator (go between, reconciler, intercessor) of the new testament (covenant), that by means of death, for the redemption of the transgressions that were under the first testament (covenant), they which are called might receive the promise of eternal inheritance.

And He is the only “HIGH PRIEST” over the House of God. This includes the entire Household of God which is not just a Church but includes the whole “Body of Christ”.

Heb 10:21-22
21 And having an high priest (2409) over the house (household) of God:

Therefore as God’s “Pastor/Priest”, let yourself draw near to God through Jesus Christ with a true
heart in complete confidence of your Faith (in the truthfulness of God), knowing that you have been bathed with pure water.

22 Let us draw near with a true heart in full assurance (entire confidence) of faith (the truthfulness of God), having our hearts sprinkled from an evil (hurtful, bad, grievous, lewd, malicious or wicked) conscience, and our bodies washed (bathed) with pure water.

E. THE UNCHANGEABLE PRIESTHOOD:
Because of its imperfection, the Levitical “Priesthood” under which the people received the Law, had to be changed. Therefore, Jesus who rose after the order and similitude (manner) of Melchisedec came and changed the “Priesthood” that was called after the order of Aaron.

Heb 7:11-16
11 If therefore perfection (or ‘expiation’ - which is the act of making atonement or the means by which atonement is made) were by the Levitical priesthood (2420), (for under it the people received the law,) what further need was there that another priest (2409) should rise after the order of Melchisedec, and not be called after the order of Aaron?

When the Levitical “Priesthood” was changed, it was also necessary to change the Law.

12 For the priesthood (2420) being changed (transferred or exchanged), there is made of necessity a change (or ‘transposition’ - which is an act, process, or instance of transposing) also of the law.

This change (transfer, exchange, or transposition) of the Law did not come from man but from Jesus Christ Himself.

13 For he of whom these things are spoken pertaineth to another tribe, of which no man gave attendance (paid attention to) at the altar.
14 For it is evident that our Lord sprang out of Juda; of which tribe Moses spake nothing concerning priesthood (2409).
15 And it is yet far more evident: for that after the similitude (manner) of Melchisedec there ariseth another priest (2409).

His change (transfer, exchange, or transposition) of the Law was not of a carnal or fleshly commandment but after the ‘dunamis’ power of an endless life.

16 Who is made, not after the law of a carnal (fleshly) commandment, but after the power (dunamis) of an endless life.

Since the Law made nothing perfect (complete, consecrated, fulfilled, or finished), the bringing in of this better hope did; by which we are now able to draw near to God.

Heb 7:19
19 For the law made nothing perfect (complete, consecrated, fulfilled, or finished), but the bringing in of a better hope did; by which we draw nigh (near) unto God.
Jesus Christ has been made a “Priest” forever with the ‘Oath’ of God.

**Heb 7:20-21**

20 And inasmuch as not without an oath he was made priest (2409):
21 (For those priests (2409) were made without an oath; but this with an oath by him that said unto him, The Lord sware and will not repent, Thou art a priest (2409) for ever after the order of Melchisedec;)

For the Law appointed men as “High Priests” who have weaknesses or frailties, but the word of the Oath, which came after the Law, appointed the Son who has been perfected forever.

**Heb 7:28**

28 For the law maketh men high priests (749) which have infirmity (weaknesses or frailties); but the word of the oath, which was since the law, maketh the Son, who is consecrated (perfected) for evermore.

And because Jesus abides forever, He alone has ‘The Unchangeable Priesthood’.

**Heb 7:24**

24 But this man (one), because he continueth (abides, dwells, endures, is present, remains, stands, for) ever, hath an unchangeable (perpetual) priesthood (2420).

**F. CLOTHED WITH RIGHTEOUSNESS:**

As an example to/for the ‘Flock’, a “Pastor/Priest” needs to be clothed (or wrapped around) with ‘Righteousness’. In other words a “Pastor/Priest” needs to exhibit ‘Righteousness’ at all times.

As it states in the Psalms:

**Ps 132:9**

9 Let thy priests (3548) be clothed (wrapped around) with righteousness (6664); and let thy saints shout for joy.

This brings up the question - What is ‘Righteousness’?

The Dictionary states that ‘Righteousness is:

- Acting in accord with divine or moral law, free from guilt or sin.
- Morally right or justifiable, such as a righteous decision.
- Righteous indignation arising from an outraged sense of justice or morality.
- Being in accordance with what is just, good, or proper, such as right conduct.
- Conforming to facts or truth.
- **Rightness** which is justice, moral virtue and integrity.
- **Rectitude** which means the quality or state of being straight and/or the quality or state of being correct in judgment and/or procedure.

‘Righteousness’ in Hebrew is:
OT:6664 tsedeq (tseh'-dek); from OT:6663; the right (natural, moral or legal); also (abstractly) equity or (figuratively) prosperity:
KJV - even, (X that which is altogether) just (-ice), (un-) right (-eous) (cause, -ly, -ness).

OT:6666 tsedaqah (tsed-aw-kaw'); from OT:6663; rightness (abstractly), subjectively (rectitude), objectively (justice), morally (virtue) or figuratively (prosperity):
KJV - justice, moderately, right (-eous) (act, -ly, -ness).

‘Righteousness’ in Greek is:

NT:1342 dikaios (dik'-ah-yos); from NT:1349; equitable (in character or act); by implication, innocent, holy (absolutely or relatively):
KJV - just, meet, right (-eous).
NT:1343 dikaiosune (dik-ah-yos-oo'-nay); from NT:1342; equity (of character or act); specially (Christian) justification:
KJV - righteousness.

The Bible states in Isaiah that all of our ‘Righteousness’s’ as filthy rags:

**Isa 64:6**
6 But we are all as an unclean (defiled, infamous, or polluted) thing, and all our righteousnesses (6666) are as filthy rags ;…

Therefore, a “Pastor/Priest” needs to put on the ‘Righteousness’ of God, and that ‘Righteousness’ comes by the Faith of Jesus Christ unto all those that ‘Believe’ in Him.

**Rom 3:21-22**
21 But now the righteousness (1343) of God without the law is manifested (rendered apparent), being witnessed (bearing record) by the law and the prophets;
22 Even the righteousness (1343) of God which is by faith of Jesus Christ unto all and upon all them that believe: for there is no difference (distinction):

If your ‘Righteousness’ as a “Pastor/Priest” does not exceed that of the ‘religious pretenders’ such as were many of the Scribes and the Pharisees, you shall NOT enter into the Kingdom of Heaven! (Matthew 23:13)

**Matt 5:20**
20 For I say unto you, That except (unless) your righteousness (1343) shall exceed the righteousness (1343) of the scribes (professional writers) and Pharisees (separatists or exclusively religious), ye shall in no case (never) enter into the kingdom of heaven.

You might ask, how do we know those that are unrighteous? The answer is you shall know them by their fruits! (Matthew 7:16-20)

Since you know that Jesus is ‘Righteous’, then you know that those that truly do ‘Righteousness’ are ‘Righteous’ through Him.
1 John 2:29
29 If ye know that he is righteous (1342), ye know that every one that doeth righteousness (1343) is born (regenerated) of him.

Do not let anyone in the clergy deceive you even if they wear a collar! If anyone does not ‘Righteousness’ they are not of God.

1 John 3:7
7 Little children, let no man (not even one man, woman or thing) deceive you: he that doeth righteousness (1343) is righteous (1342), even as he is righteous (1342).

1 John 3:10
10 In this the children of God are manifest (apparent or known), and the children of the devil: whosoever doeth not righteousness (1343) is not of God, neither he that loveth not his brother.

As it states in Revelation, it is time to stop kidding yourself, as a “Pastor/Priest” you cannot stand in the middle ground. Either you are ‘Righteous’ through Jesus Christ or you are not ‘Righteous’ - so be what you are! (Exodus 32:26)

Rev 22:11
11 He that is unjust (does wrong socially, morally or physically), let him be unjust still: and he which is filthy (dirty, cheap, morally wicked or vile), let him be filthy still: and he that is righteous (1342), let him be righteous (1343) still: and he that is holy (sacred or physically pure, morally blameless, a Saint), let him be holy (purified, consecrated, and sanctified) still.

Matthew Henry sums up Righteousness in his Commentary this way:
*Note - “Righteousness is the best ornament of a Minister. Holiness towards God and goodness towards all men are habits for Ministers of the necessity of which there is no dispute. They are thy Priests, and will therefore discredit their relation to thee if they be not clothed with Righteousness.”

G. CLOTHED WITH SALVATION:
All “Pastors/Priests” need to be clothed (or wrapped around) with ‘Salvation’. In other words a “Pastor/Priest” needs to always be aware of the free Gift of Salvation that they have received from the Lord. This in turn will remind you that whatever you do or teach, it should have the ultimate goal of ministering ‘Salvation’ to others. This can be accomplished in your Church by consistently having ‘altar calls’ in order to lead people to the Lord and/or to recommit their lives to Jesus Christ.

You may ask what does ‘Salvation’ actually mean?

The Dictionary states that ‘Salvation’ is:
- Deliverance from the power and effects of sin.
- The agent or means that affects Salvation.

‘Salvation’ in Hebrew is:

**OT:3444 yeshu’ah** (yesh-oo’-aw): feminine passive participle of OT:3467; something saved, i.e. (abstractly) deliverance; hence, aid, victory, prosperity:
KJV - deliverance, health, help (-ing), salvation, save, saving (health), welfare.

OT:3468 yezh` (yeh'-shah); or yesha` (yay'-shah); from OT:3467; liberty, deliverance, prosperity:

KJV - safety, salvation, saving.

Salvation in Hebrew also means:
- To Bring or having Salvation, to get the victory, liberty, and deliverance.
- To be open, wide or free, to be safe; causatively, to free.
- To Succor which means to run to the rescue or to bring aid or help.

Not only does a “Pastor/Priest” need to be ‘Saved’ themselves, but they also need to be instrumental in leading their ‘Flock’ and all others they come in contact with to the Lord.

Ps 132:16
16 I will also clothe (wrap around) her priests with salvation (3468): and her saints shall shout aloud for joy.

‘Salvation’ in Greek is:

NT:4991 soteria (so-tay-ree'-ah); feminine of a derivative of NT:4990 as (properly, abstract) noun; rescue or safety (physically or morally):

KJV - deliver, health, salvation, save, saving.

‘Saved’ in Greek is:

NT:4982 sozo (sode'-zo); from a primary sos (contraction for obsolete saoz, "safe"); to save, i.e. deliver or protect (literally or figuratively):

KJV - heal, preserve, save (self), do well, be (make) whole.

‘Savior’ in Greek is:

NT:4990 soter (so-tare'); from NT:4982; a deliverer, i.e. God or Christ:

KJV - saviour.

In the Book of Luke, Zacharias prophesied that God would redeem or ransom His people with the ‘horn’ of ‘Salvation’. The ‘horn’ means a ray of light, strength and/or power which is Jesus Christ!

(2 Samuel 22:3)

Luke 1:67-69
67 And his father Zacharias was filled with the Holy Ghost, and prophesied, saying.
68 Blessed be the Lord God of Israel; for he hath visited and redeemed (ransomed) his people,
69 And hath raised up an horn of salvation (4991) for us in the house of his servant David:

And the knowledge of that ‘Salvation’ is given to His people by the remission (or freedom, pardon, deliverance, forgiveness and liberty) of their Sins.

Luke 1:77
77 To give knowledge of salvation (4991) unto his people by the remission (or freedom, pardon, deliverance, forgiveness and liberty) of their sins.

As a “Pastor/Priest”, when you Preach or Teach you may be asked - who can be ‘Saved’? The answer of course is that ‘Salvation’ is to everyone that believes, to the Jews first (at the beginning) and also to the Greeks (Gentiles or non-Jews).

Rom 1:16
16 For I am not ashamed of the gospel of Christ: for it is the power (dunamis) of God unto salvation (4991) to everyone that believeth; to the Jew first (at the beginning), and also to the Greek (Gentiles or non-Jews).

For whosoever (all, anyone or everyone that) Calls upon the Name of the Lord shall be ‘Saved’.

Rom 10:13
13 For whosoever (all, anyone or everyone that) shall call upon the name of the Lord shall be saved (4982).

Remember, the word of ‘Salvation’ is near to everyone, even in their mouth and in their heart. However, it is the “Pastors/Priests” responsibility to manifest the ‘Word of Faith’ in them. This can be accomplished by regularly Preaching ‘Salvation’ which is the ‘Word of Faith’, and then offering it to them!

Rom 10:8-10
8 But what saith it? The word is nigh (near) thee, even in thy mouth, and in thy heart: that is, the word of faith (which is reliance upon Christ for Salvation), which we preach;

It is up to the people that hear the ‘Word of Faith’ (which is reliance upon Christ for Salvation) to accept it. Then they need to confess with their mouth that Jesus is Lord and believe in their heart that God has raised Him from the Dead.

9 That if thou shalt confess (promise) with thy mouth the Lord Jesus, and shalt believe in thine heart that God hath raised him from the dead, thou shalt be saved (4982).

This is because with the heart man believes unto ‘Righteousness’ and with the mouth confession is made unto ‘Salvation’.

10 For with the heart man believeth (entrust your Spiritual well-being to Christ) unto righteousness (1343); and with the mouth confession (a promise) is made unto salvation (4991).

Remember also that there is no other name or person under Heaven that has been revealed among mankind except Jesus Christ whereby we must be Saved!!
(Read the Study Guide “No Other Name” written by Timothy II)

Acts 4:12
12 Neither is there salvation (4991) in any other: for there is none (no) other name under heaven given among men (human beings), whereby we must be saved (4982).

Matthew Henry sums up Salvation in his Commentary this way:

*Note - “It was desired that the Priests might be clothed with Righteousness; it is here promised that God will clothe them with Salvation, not only Save them, but make them and their administrations instrumental for the Salvation of his people; they shall both Save themselves and those that hear them, and add those to the Church that shall be Saved. Note, Whom God clothes with Righteousness He will clothe with Salvation; we must pray for Righteousness and then with it God will give Salvation.”

**H. THE WORK OF THE PRIEST:**
One of the most important parts of the work of the “Pastor/Priest” is to teach God’s people the difference between the ‘Holy’ and the ‘Profane’.

**Ezek 44:23**
23 And they (the Priests) shall teach (point out, inform, instruct, and show) my people the difference between the holy (6944) and profane (2455),…

In order to teach God’s people the difference between the ‘Holy’ and the ‘Profane’, we need to know what these two words mean:

The Dictionary states that ‘Holy’ is:
- Exalted or worthy of complete devotion as one perfect in goodness and righteousness.

‘Holy’ in Hebrew is:

**OT:6944 qodesh** (ko’-desh); from OT:6942; a sacred place or thing; rarely abstract, sanctity:
- KJV - consecrated (thing), dedicated (thing), hallowed (thing), holiness, (X most) holy (X day, portion, thing), saint, sanctuary.

The Dictionary states that ‘Profane’ is:
- To treat (something sacred) with abuse, irreverence, or contempt.
- To debase by a wrong, unworthy, or vulgar use.

‘Profane’ in Hebrew is:

**OT:2455 chol** (khole); from OT:2490; properly, exposed; hence, profane:
- KJV - common, profane (place), unholy.

Other meanings for ‘Profane’ in Hebrew are:
- **Profane (2490)** - ‘chalal’ in Hebrew which means:
  - To profane (a person, place or thing),
  - To break (one’s word),
  - To defile, to pollute, to prostitute, to stain or wound.
- **Profane (2610)** - ‘chaneph’ in Hebrew which means:
  - To soil, especially in a moral sense;
To corrupt, defile, greatly, pollute, profane.

Another one of the most important parts of the work of the “Pastor/Priest” is to teach their ‘Flock’ to discern between the ‘Unclean’ and the ‘Clean’.

**Ezek 44:23**

23 ... **and cause them to discern** (observe, recognize, be aware of, to comprehend, to know and to understand) **between the unclean** (2931) **and the clean** (2889).

The Dictionary states that ‘Clean’ is:

- Free from dirt or pollution.
- Free from contamination or disease.
- Free from moral corruption or sinister connections of any kind.
- Free from violations.
- Free from offensive treatment of sexual subjects and from the use of obscenity.
- Ceremonially or spiritually pure.
- Relatively free from error or blemish.
- Free from drug addiction.
- Having no contraband (as weapons or drugs) in one’s possession.

‘Clean’ in Hebrew is:

**OT:2889 tahowr** (taw-hore’); or tahor (taw-hore’); from OT:2891; **pure** (in a physical, chemical, ceremonial or moral sense):

KJV - clean, fair, pure (-ness).

The Dictionary states that ‘Unclean’ is:

- Morally or spiritually impure.
- Prohibited by ritual law for use or contact.
- Lacking in clarity and precision of conception or execution.
- Infected with a harmful supernatural ‘contagion’ - which is a contagious disease, the transmission of a disease by direct or indirect contact, or a disease-producing agent (as a virus). Also a contagious influence, quality, or nature, corrupting influence or contact; a rapid communication of an influence (as a doctrine or emotional state); or an influence that spreads rapidly.

‘Unclean’ in Hebrew is:

**OT:2931 tame’** (taw-may’); from OT:2930; **foul in a religious sense**:

KJV - defiled, infamous, polluted (-tion), unclean.

In conclusion of this section, a “Pastor/Priest” must teach and cause the people of their ‘Flock’ to discern the difference between the ‘Holy’ and the ‘Profane’ and the ‘Unclean’ and the ‘Clean’ or else the results could be that the Lord Himself could be wounded and cast as ‘profane’ among you!

**Jer 23:11**
For both prophet and priest (3548) are profane (2610); yea, in my house have I found their wickedness (bad or evil), saith the LORD.
Ezek 22:26

Her priests (3548) have violated my law, and have profaned (2490) mine holy things (6944); they have put no difference between the holy (6944) and profane (2455), neither have they shewed difference between the unclean (2931) and the clean (2889), and have hid their eyes from my sabbaths, and I am profaned (2490) (wounded and cast as profane) among them.

1. THE GLORY OF THE LORD:
There is a proper time when the “Pastor/Priest” should not Minister! This is when ‘The Glory of the Lord’ enters into the Church. Thus, when the “Pastor/Priest” feels the ‘presence’ of the Lord come into the Church or Sanctuary, he should step aside and let “God the Holy Spirit” take over. (1 Corinthians 2:4) (Read the Tract “The Glory of the Lord” written by Timothy II)

Sometimes as a “Pastor/Priest” you need to get out of the way and let God take over and be God. That is why it is so important for a “Pastor/Priest” to be ‘Filled’ with the Holy Ghost (Spirit) and to be sensitive to the moving of the Holy Ghost (Spirit). (Ephesians 4:30 1 Thessalonians 5:19)
(Read the Study Guide “The Baptism with the Holy Ghost” written by Timothy II)

In order to better understand ‘The Glory of the Lord’ we need to know what is the meaning of ‘Glory’.

‘Glory’ in Hebrew is:
OT:3519 kabowd (kaw-bode’); rarely kabod (kaw-bode’); from OT:3513; properly, weight, but only figuratively in a good sense, splendor or copiousness: -glorious (-ly), glory, honour (-able).

• ‘Copiousness’ - means yielding abundantly or plentiful; present in a large quantity or taking place on a large scale.

Here are some examples in the Old Testament when ‘The Glory of the Lord’ filled the House of the Lord so that the “Priests” could not Minister.

1 Kings 8:11
11 So that the priests (3548) could not stand to minister because of the cloud: for the glory of the LORD had filled the house of the LORD.

2 Chron 5:14
14 So that the priests (3548) could not stand to minister by reason of the cloud: for the glory of the LORD had filled the house of God.

2 Chron 7:2
2 And the priests (3548) could not enter into the house of the LORD, because the glory of the LORD had filled the LORD's house.

In these last days, God is manifesting Himself throughout the World. Therefore, we should not be surprised if and when He shows up in our Churches. For a long time now I have been prophesying that ‘The Glory of the Lord’ which includes all the fullness of “The Godhead” will be visiting the ‘True Churches of God’.

1 Kings 8:11

11 So that the priests (3548) could not stand to minister because of the cloud: for the glory of the LORD had filled the house of the LORD.

2 Chron 5:14

14 So that the priests (3548) could not stand to minister by reason of the cloud: for the glory of the LORD had filled the house of God.

2 Chron 7:2

2 And the priests (3548) could not enter into the house of the LORD, because the glory of the LORD had filled the LORD's house.

In these last days, God is manifesting Himself throughout the World. Therefore, we should not be surprised if and when He shows up in our Churches. For a long time now I have been prophesying that ‘The Glory of the Lord’ which includes all the fullness of “The Godhead” will be visiting the ‘True Churches of God’.

In these last days, God is manifesting Himself throughout the World. Therefore, we should not be surprised if and when He shows up in our Churches. For a long time now I have been prophesying that ‘The Glory of the Lord’ which includes all the fullness of “The Godhead” will be visiting the ‘True Churches of God’.
We too shall then be transformed by the ‘Holy Spirit’ when we see ‘The Glory of the Lord’.

2 Cor 3:17-18
17 Now the Lord is that Spirit: and where the Spirit of the Lord is, there is liberty (freedom).
18 But we all, with open (an unveiled) face beholding as in a glass the glory of the Lord, are changed (transformed) into the same image from glory to glory, even as by the (Holy) Spirit of the Lord.

And right now, God has given us a light that shines in our heart, and that light is of the ‘Knowledge’ of ‘The Glory of God’ which is in the face of Jesus Christ!

2 Cor 4:6
6 For God, who commanded the light to shine out of darkness, hath shined in our hearts, to give the light of the knowledge of the glory of God in the face (appearance, presence or person) of Jesus Christ.

J. THE GOOD SAMARITAN:
The following parable is a wonderful story that Jesus told about ‘The Good Samaritan’.
The story starts out with ‘bad news’ when a certain man fell among thieves and was robbed, beaten and left for dead.

Luke 10:30-37
30 And Jesus answering said, A certain man went down from Jerusalem to Jericho, and fell among thieves, which stripped him of his raiment (clothes), and wounded him, and departed, leaving him half dead.

In this story however, it gets worse, when a certain “Priest” (possibly a High Priest) saw this poor man, avoided him and passed him by, crossing on the other side of the road. Then a ‘Levite’ came upon this man who had been robbed and wounded and was half dead, and looked at him and avoided him by also passing on the other side of the road.

31 And by chance there came down a certain priest (2409 hierus) that way: and when he saw him, he passed by on the other side.
32 And likewise a Levite (a descendant of Levi), when he was at the place, came and looked on him, and passed by on the other side.

Finally there is ‘good news’ when a certain good ‘Samaritan’ saw the man and had compassion on him. He gave him ‘first-aid’ by binding his wounds and pouring oil and wine on them. Then he took the man to an Inn and took care of him. What is interesting here is that in those days the Jews had no dealings with the Samaritans and they did not get along. (John 4:9) Yet this Samaritan did not let that interfere with his compassion on the wounded man.

33 But a certain Samaritan, as he journeyed, came where he was: and when he saw him, he had compassion (4697 - to feel sympathy or pity) on him.
34 And went to him, and bound (bandaged) up his wounds, pouring in oil and wine, and set him on his own beast (domestic animal), and brought him to an inn, and took care of him.
The next day before the Samaritan departed, he gave some money to the Inn-keeper to help pay for whatever he needed to finish taking care of the man. He then said he would also come back and pay more if it was needed.

35. **And on the morrow** (next day) **when he departed, he took out two pence, and gave them to the host, and said unto him, Take care of him; and whatsoever thou spendest more, when I come again, I will repay thee.**

The question Jesus asked a certain lawyer in this parable is: who was a neighbor (friend or Christian) to this man?

36. **Which now of these three, thinkest thou, was neighbor** (friend or Christian) **unto him that fell among the thieves?**

The lawyer answered: he that showed mercy (compassion) to the man. Then Jesus said to the lawyer go and do likewise.

37. **And he said, He that shewed mercy** (1656 - compassion) **on him, Then said Jesus unto him, Go, and do thou likewise.**

An important part of this parable is that the two ‘religious’ men (the Priest and the Levite) did not have compassion on this man and they showed it by not helping him. Therefore, the two ‘religious’ men did not intervene like Jesus would have them to do. (1 Peter 3:8 1 John 3:17 Jude 22)

The two ‘religious’ men also did not show love for their neighbor. (Romans 13:9 Galatians 5:14 James 2:8) This is an important principle for you as a “Pastor/Priest”. You should always be an example to your ‘Flock’ and to show your love and compassion for all people at all times. (Matthew 25:34-46)

‘Compassion’ in Greek is:

**NT:4697 splagchnizomai** (splangkh-nid'-zom-ahee); middle voice from NT:4698; to have the bowels yearn, i.e. (figuratively) feel sympathy, to pity: KJV - have (be moved with) compassion.

‘Mercy’ in Greek is:

**NT:1656 eleos** (el'-eh-os); of uncertain affinity; compassion (human or divine, especially active): KJV - (+tender) mercy.

K. **FALSELY APPOINTED PRIESTS:**

There are some ‘religious groups’ that appoint “Pastors/Priests” that have actually not been Called by God!! By doing this they have Sinned in the eyes of God; therefore, beware of these ‘religious groups’ and their ‘falsely appointed’ “Priests”.

An example of this in the Bible is when Jeroboam made “Priests” of the lowest of his people which were
not from the ‘Priestly’ tribe of Levi. He continued to do this and whosoever he wanted, he consecrated and made them “Priests”. This became Sin to his House and eventually the Lord cut it off and destroyed it off the face of the earth.

1 Kings 12:31
31 And he (Jeroboam) made an house of high places, and made priests (3548) of the lowest of the people, which were not of the sons of Levi.

1 Kings 13:33-34
33 After this thing Jeroboam returned not from his evil (wicked) way, but made again of the lowest of the people priests (3548) of the high places; whosoever would, he consecrated (confirmed) him, and he became one of the priests (3548) of the high places.
34 And this thing became sin unto the house of Jeroboam, even to cut it off (down), and to destroy it from off the face of the earth.

One of the problems we have today is that of ‘Culture’. Many times when people in different countries accept the Lord, they still retain their ‘Culture’ with their Christianity. This is sometimes OK as long as that ‘Culture’ does not resist or interfere with the true Word of God.

An example here in Second Kings is after the King of Assyria conquered Israel, he sent one of the exiled “Priests” from Samaria back to Israel. The “Priest” was to teach the new residents from Assyria the religious customs of what is here called the God of the land.

2 Kings 17:27-29
27 Then the king of Assyria commanded, saying, Carry (send) thither (there) one of the priests (3548) whom ye brought from thence (there); and let them go and dwell there, and let him teach them the manner of the God of the land.

The “Priest” that went to Bethel taught the manner of God, which included how they should “Fear the Lord”.

28 Then one of the priests (3548) whom they had carried away from Samaria came and dwelt in Bethel, and taught them how they should fear the LORD.

However, all these people continued to make their own gods and put them in the Houses of the high places where they could worship them.

29 Howbeit every nation (all the people) made gods of their own, and put them in the houses of the high places which the Samaritans had made, every nation (all the people) in their cities wherein they dwelt.

So although the people thought that they “Feared the Lord”, they still made and worshiped their own gods, and they still appointed of the lowest of them “Priests” of the high places.

2 Kings 17:32-34
32 So they feared (to fear morally, to revere, to be afraid) the LORD, and made unto themselves of the lowest of them priests (3548) of the high places, which sacrificed for them in the houses of the
They feared (to fear morally, to revere, to be afraid of) the LORD, and served their own gods, after the manner (customs) of the nations (the people) whom they carried away from hence (there).

This continues even unto today! However, in God’s eyes, these people do not know nor do they understand the “Fear of the Lord”!

Unto this day they do after the former manners (customs): they fear not (they do not fear morally, or revere, or are not afraid of) the LORD, neither do they after their statutes, or after their ordinances, or after the law and commandment which the LORD commanded the children of Jacob, whom he named Israel:

In the Old Testament there were some who even cast out the true “Pastors/Priests” that the Lord had actually Called. Such was the case in the war between Abijah and Jeroboam.

Here Abijah accused Jeroboam of casting out the “Priests” that God had Called and made “Priests” of whosoever!

2 Chron 13:9-10
9 Have ye not cast out the priests (3548) of the LORD, the sons of Aaron, and the Levites, and have made you priests (3548) after the manner of the nations (the people) of other lands? so that whosoever cometh to consecrate himself with a young bullock and seven rams, the same may be a priest (3548) of them that are no gods.

Hopefully as a “Pastor/Priest” you can say that the Lord is your God, and you are truly Called of God.

10 But as for us, the LORD is our God, and we have not forsaken him; and the priests (3548), which minister unto the LORD, are the sons of Aaron, and the Levites wait upon their business (Ministry):

The following are the results of appointing False “Pastors/Priests”:

The “Priests” will rule by their own means (power) and direction, and the ‘Flock’ will love to have it so! But what will you do in the end times?

Jer 5:30-31
30 A wonderful (astonishing, amazing, or wonder) and horrible (or fearful) thing is committed in the land:
31 The prophets prophesy falsely, and the priests (3548) bear rule (over) by their means (by their own power and direction); and my people (or ‘Flock’) love to have it so: and what will ye do in the end thereof (last or end, or end times)?

Whether young or old, important or unimportant, small or great, ‘Falsely Appointed’ “Priests” will generally end up dealing ‘falsely’ in the House of God.

Jer 6:13 Jer 8:10
13 For from the least of them (younger in age or importance; or in quantity, size or number) even unto the greatest of them (older or great in any sense) every one is given to covetousness (dishonest gain, lucre and profit); and from the prophet even unto the priest (3548) every one dealeth falsely (an untruth, a sham, without a cause, deceitful, lying or wrongfully).

Many ‘Falsely Appointed’ “Priests” will actually rule for the rewards, gifts and/or donations. Some will even teach just for the wages, yet they think they are relying upon the Lord and say the Lord is among us so no evil can come upon us. (Jeremiah 48:10)

Mic 3:11
11 The heads (7218 - Priests, chiefs, leaders, rulers) thereof judge (govern or rule) for reward (a gift, a present, a donation or a bribe), and the priests (3548) thereof teach for hire (for wages, payment or gain), and the prophets thereof divine for money: yet will they lean (rely) upon the LORD, and say, Is not the LORD among us? none evil can come upon us.

L. THE MISUSE OF ALCOHOL:
Although some “Pastors/Priests” drink Alcohol, I believe the Bible actually teaches that anyone in ‘Christian Leadership’ should abstain from drinking any type of Alcohol.
(Read the Tract “Alcohol - Booze” written by Timothy II)

The reasons why a “Pastor/Priest” should not drink any Alcohol is because when drinking wine and/or strong drink it can cause you to error or to go astray. This in turn can cause a “Pastor/Priest” that drinks to become out of the way and/or to vacillate or waver in their minds and to hesitate in their choice of opinions or courses.
Drinking Alcohol can cause you to error in vision which will affect your moral and Spiritual insight. It can also cause you to stumble in the action of judgment and/or the administration of justice.

Isa 28:7
7 But they also have erred (gone astray, wandered, been mislead, been deceived, transgressed morally, or sinned through ignorance) through wine, and through strong drink are out of the way (vacillate - which means to waver in mind, will, or feeling and/or to hesitate in choice of opinions or courses); the priest (3548) and the prophet have erred (gone astray, wandered, been mislead, been deceived, transgressed morally, or sinned through ignorance) through strong drink, they are swallowed up (devoured and destroyed) of wine, they are out of the way (vacillate) through strong drink; they err (have gone astray, wandered, been mislead, been deceived, transgressed morally, or sinned through ignorance) in vision (such as a person credited with extraordinary moral and spiritual insight), they stumble (or waver) in judgment (or ‘judicature’ - which means the action of judging and/or the administration of justice).

In the Old Testament it was forbidden for “Priests” to drink wine before entering into the inner courtyard of the Tabernacle. (Leviticus 10:9)

Ezek 44:21
21 Neither shall any priest (3548) drink (to ‘imbibe’ - which means to drink in or to absorb like a sponge) wine (as fermented), when they enter into the inner court (court-yard).
Drinking wine can easily lead to whoredoms because it can seize and carry away your Heart and Mind so that you do not the things that God requires of you as a “Pastor/Priest”.

**Hos 4:11**
11 Whoredom (adultery, infidelity, idolatry) and wine and new wine take away the heart (the will, the intellect, the mind, understanding and wisdom).

The following are the qualifications in the Bible for “Pastors/Priests” who are considered ‘Overseers’ of the Church. Notice that they are not to be given to wine!

The word ‘not’ in the Greek means:

**NT:3361 me** (may); a primary particle of qualified negation (whereas NT:3756 expresses an absolute denial); (adverbially) not, (conjunctionally) lest; also (as an interrogative implying a negative answer [whereas NT:3756 expects an affirmative one]) whether:

- To forbear means to do without, or to hold one-self back from, especially with an effort.
- God forbid means never, no (wise), none, cannot, nothing; or to abstain.
- To abstain means to refrain deliberately and often with an effort of self-denial from an action or practice such as to abstain from drinking.

‘Given to wine’ in Greek means:

**NT:3943 paroinos** (par'-oy-nos); from NT:3844 and NT:3631; staying near wine, i.e. tippling (a toper):

KJV - given to wine.

- Tippling means to drink liquor especially by habit or to excess; or to drink (liquor) especially continuously in small amounts.
- A Toper means one that topes; especially a drunkard.

As a “Pastor/Priest” you must not be given to wine, however, there are also other characteristics that you are warned about that usually accompanies the drinking of Alcohol.

They are:

- Be ‘blameless’ - which is to be unrebukeable or ‘inculpable’ - which means to be free from guilt.
- Be ‘sober’ - which is to be sound in mind, self-controlled and temperate.
- No ‘striker’ - which means to not be pugnacious, quarrelsome or a ‘smiter’ - which means to strike sharply or heavily, especially with the hand or an implement held in the hand; or to kill or severely injure by smiting; or to attack or afflict suddenly and injuriously.
- Not a ‘brawler’ - which means be not a fighter, not one that battles or strives, not one that is controversial, but one who is peaceable.
- Not ‘self-willed’ - which means not to be self-pleasing and not arrogant.
- Not ‘soon angry’ - which means not feeling or showing anger, or not ‘irascible’ - which means...
not marked by hot temper and easily provoked anger.

1 Tim 3:2-3
2 A bishop (a Superintendent, a Christian Officer in charge of a Church, or an Overseer) then must be blameless, the husband of one wife, vigilant, sober, of good behaviour, given to hospitality, apt to teach:
3 Not (3361) given to wine (3943), no striker, not greedy of filthy lucre; but patient, not a brawler, not covetous;

Titus 1:7
7 For a bishop (a Superintendent, a Christian Officer in charge of a Church, or an Overseer) must be blameless, as the steward (Overseer or Preacher of the Gospel) of God; not selfwilled, not soon angry, not (3361) given to wine (3943), no striker, not given to filthy lucre:

The following are ‘important warnings’ about the cost of becoming an Alcoholic. Please take it to heart! I know what I am exhorting and warning you about because I used to be an Alcoholic. Fortunately, God intervened in my life and graciously removed my desire for Alcohol/Booze. (Read “The Timothy II Testimony” written by Timothy II)

Prov 23:29-35
29 Who hath woe (crying out after or ‘lamentation’ - which is an act or instance of lamenting)? who hath sorrow (want)? who hath contentions (brawling)? who hath babbling (complaints)? who hath wounds without cause? who hath redness of eyes?
30 They that tarry long (continue or stay there) at the wine; they that go to seek mixed wine.
31 Look not thou upon the wine (as fermented or ‘effervesce’ - which means when it bubbles, hisses, and foams as gas escapes; also means when it shows liveliness or exhilaration) when it is red (or turns rosy), when it giveth his colour (sparkles) in the cup, when it moveth (whirls) itself aright (evenly).
32 At the last it biteth (strikes) like a serpent, and stingeth like an adder.
33 Thine eyes shall behold strange women, and thine heart shall utter perverse things (which are those things that are turned away from what is right or good).
34 Yea, thou shalt be as he that lieth down in the midst of the sea, or as he that lieth upon the top of a (shaking) mast.
35 They have stricken me, shalt thou say, and I was not sick (afflicted or wounded); they have beaten me, and I felt it not: when shall I awake? I will seek it yet again!

M. FALLEN PRIESTS:
If anyone listens to the radio or Television today, you will certainly hear and see almost anywhere in the world that there are many “Pastors/Priests” who have fallen.

Here the Lord gives us some of the reasons why the “Pastors/Priests” have fallen. First it is because the “Pastor/Priest” has rejected the ‘Spirit of the Knowledge’ of God, and the people in turn are being destroyed because of their lack of Knowledge.
Next the Scriptures say that because of this, God will reject you, and you will no more be a “Priest” to Him. Also because the “Pastor/Priest” has forgotten the Word of God He will forget your ‘Flock’.

Hos 4:6-7
6 My people are destroyed (dumb, silent, or perish) for lack of knowledge: because thou hast
rejected (spurned, cast away and despised) knowledge, I will also reject (spurn, cast away and despise) thee, that thou shalt be no priest (3547) to me: seeing thou hast forgotten the law of thy God, I will also forget thy children.

As the ‘Flock’ has increased, the more they have Sinned against the Lord, thus their glory will be changed into shame.

7 As they were increased, so they sinned against me: therefore will I change their glory into shame (disgrace, confusion, dishonor and reproach).

In Zephaniah, it states that the fallen “Priests” have polluted the Sanctuary, and thus they have done violence to or mistreated the Word of God.

Zeph 3:4

4 Her prophets are light (unimportant) and treacherous persons: her priests (3548) have polluted (profaned, defiled, or stained) the sanctuary, they have done violence to (‘maltreated’ - which means to treat cruelly or roughly, or to abuse or to do wrong to) the law (precepts or statutes).

N. CURSES:

As a “Pastor/Priest” this commandment is for you! If you do not hear or lay it to your Heart to give Glory and Honor to the Name of the Lord, He will send a ‘Curse’ upon you. In fact if you do not lay it to your Heart to Glorify His Name, the Bible states that He has already ‘Cursed’ you!

- To ‘Curse’ is to bitterly “curse or to ‘execrate’ - which means to declare to be evil or detestable or to detest utterly.

Mal 2:1-2

1 And now, O ye priests (3548), this commandment is for you. 2 If ye will not hear (intelligently, attentively, carefully, diligently, or listen), and if ye will not lay (commit) it to heart (your will, your intellect, and your mind), to give glory (honor, splendor or ‘copiousness’ - which means yielding something abundantly, plentiful in number, full of thought, profuse or exuberant in words, expression, or style; and/or present in a large quantity or taking place on a large scale) unto my name, saith the LORD of hosts, I will even send a curse upon you, and I will curse your blessings: vea, I have cursed them already, because ye do not lay (commit) it to heart (your will, your intellect, and your mind).

O. THE RESTORATION OF FALLEN PRIESTS:

If a “Pastor/Priest” ‘Falls’, they should be immediately removed from their current position, however, they may always be ‘restored’ when and if they ‘Repent’. (Revelation 2:5 2:16 3:3 3:19) When a ‘Fallen’ ‘Priest’ is ‘restored’, the Bible teaches that they still should not be allowed to continue to serve in the same capacity in the same Church.

I have personally observed when a “Pastor/Priest” ‘Falls’, and they do not leave the pulpit, many times it causes others in their ‘Flock’ to also ‘Fall’. An example of this is in my own family. When the “Pastor” of my family member got a divorce, and stayed on as the Senior “Pastor”, my family member also thought that divorce was OK and got a divorce as well. I believe if he had stepped down from the pulpit this most likely would not have happened.
Once a “Pastor/Priest” has ‘Fallen’, their ‘Flock’ may have a hard time forgiving them. This can cause much doubt and confusion in the Church and can also lead to a lack of peace and unity in the Church. To avoid this situation, it is best to remove the ‘Fallen’ “Pastor/Priest” into a different position and/or place.

The following is an example of some idolatrous “Priests” that were sentenced to be deprived in part of their Office, and were put into the position of ordinary Levites. The Levites were members of the “Priestly” Hebrew tribe of Levi. These particular Levitical “Priests” were degraded or reduced in their position because they went astray from God. They did this by complying with the idolatrous Kings of Israel and Judah, and ministered unto them before their idols.

**Ezek 44:10-14**

10 And the Levites that are gone away far from me, when Israel went astray, which went astray away from me after their idols; they shall even bear their iniquity (perversity, moral evil, and sin).

11 Yet they shall be ministers (8334) in my sanctuary, having charge (custody or office of, or oversight of) at the gates of the house, and ministering (8334) to the house: they shall slay the burnt offering and the sacrifice for the people, and they shall stand before them to minister (8334) unto them.

12 Because they ministered (8334) unto them before their idols, and caused the house of Israel to fall into iniquity (perversity, moral evil, and sin); therefore have I lifted up mine hand against them, saith the Lord GOD, and they shall bear their iniquity (perversity, moral evil, and sin).

Even after the ‘Fallen’ “Priests” were ‘restored’ they still were not allowed to continue to serve the Lord in the Office of the “Priest” nor were they allowed to come near the Holy things in the Holy place. Instead they were made to be keepers of the charge of the House of God for all the Service thereof.

13 And they shall not come near (or approach for any purpose) unto me, to do the office of a priest unto me, nor to come near (or approach for any purpose) to any of my holy things, in the most holy place: but they shall bear their shame (disgrace, confusion, dishonor, reproach), and their abominations (something disgusting morally, an abhorrence, especially idolatry) which they have committed.

14 But I will make them keepers of (watchmen of) the charge (the watch, post, duty or office) of the house, for all the service (work or labor) thereof, and for all that shall be done therein.

P. THE FAITHFUL PRIESTS:

Even through times of ‘Fallen’ “Christian Leaders”, there are always many “Pastors/Priests” that remain ‘Faithful’ to God. Here the Faithful “Priests” are told by God that they will be allowed to continue to Minister unto Him in His Sanctuary and to keep His Charge. (Revelation 2:11 2:17 2:26 3:5 3:12 3:21)

**Ezek 44:15-16**

15 But the priests the Levites, the sons of Zadok, that kept the charge (the watch, post, duty or Office) of my sanctuary when the children of Israel went astray from me, they shall come near
(approach for whatever purpose) to me to minister (8334) unto me, and they shall stand before me to offer unto me the fat and the blood, saith the Lord GOD:

16 They shall enter into my sanctuary, and they shall come near (approach for whatever purpose) to my table, to minister (8334) unto me, and they shall keep my charge (my post, duty or Office).

Q. KINGS AND PRIESTS:
When God brought Israel out of Egypt He revealed to the Children of Israel (His chosen people) that if they would obey His Voice and keep His Covenant that they would become to Him a “Kingdom of Priests”.

Ex 19:3
3 And Moses went up unto God, and the LORD called unto him out of the mountain, saying, Thus shalt thou say to the house of Jacob, and tell the children of Israel:

Ex 19:5-6
5 Now therefore, if ye will obey my voice indeed, and keep my covenant, then ye shall be a peculiar treasure (a jewel or special treasure) unto me above all people: for all the earth is mine:
6 And ye shall be unto me a kingdom (dominion, realm, reign or royal) of priests (3548), and an holy (Saintly) nation (people). These are the words which thou shalt speak unto the children of Israel.

Here God promises the Jews that were returned out of captivity and settled again in their own land, that they shall be called the “Priests of the Lord”.

Isa 61:6
6 But ye shall be named (called) the Priests (3548) of the LORD: men shall call you the Ministers (Servants or Worshippers) of our God: ye shall eat the riches of the Gentiles, and in their glory shall ye boast yourselves (change places).

In the New Testament and under the New Covenant, God has now Called both Jews and Gentiles as “Kings and Priests” and a “Holy Priesthood” through Jesus Christ. That “Priesthood” is given to us by God through the Spiritual Sacrifice of Jesus Christ as a ‘Living Stone’.

1 Peter 2:4-5
4 To whom coming, as unto a living stone (stumbling-stone), disallowed (rejected) indeed of men, but chosen of God, and precious,

We too then as ‘Living Stones’ have become a “Holy Priesthood” to offer up our Spiritual Sacrifices that have become acceptable to God through Jesus Christ. (Hebrews 10:6 10:11 13:16 Mark 12:33)

5 Ye also, as lively (living) stones, are built up a spiritual house (temple), an holy (sacred or Saintly) priesthood, to offer up spiritual sacrifices, acceptable to God by Jesus Christ.

And now the whole “Body of Christ” has become a chosen generation and a “Royal Priesthood”.

1 Peter 2:9
9 But ye are a chosen generation, a royal (Kingly) priesthood, an holy nation, a peculiar (preserved and purchased) people; that ye should shew forth the praises of him who hath called you out of
darkness into his marvellous light:

We have become “Kings and Priests” to God the Father through Jesus Christ who has washed us from our Sins through His own Blood.

Rev 1:5-6
5 And from Jesus Christ, who is the faithful witness (martyr), and the first begotten of the dead, and the prince (chief ruler) of the kings of the earth. Unto him that loved us, and washed us from our sins in his own blood,
6 And hath made us kings and priests (2409) unto God and his Father; to him be glory and dominion forever and ever. Amen.

And as “Kings and Priests” we shall soon rule and reign on earth during the coming ‘thousand year millennium’.

Rev 5:10
10 And hast made us unto our God kings and priests (2409): and we shall reign (rule) on the earth.

Rev 20:6
6 Blessed (happy and supremely blest) and holy (a Saint) is he that hath part in the first resurrection: on such the second death hath no power, but they shall be priests (2409) of God and of Christ, and shall reign (rule) with him a thousand years.

There is a very important point on why God the Holy Spirit has moved on Timothy II to write this section. The point is that the Lord wants to remind all of you “Pastor/Priests” that all of the “Body of Christ” will soon become “Kings and Priests”.

Therefore as a “Pastor/Priest” that is over a ‘Flock’, you have a powerful responsibility to teach them, to train them, and to disciple them on how to become the “Kings and Priests” of God.

The best way to accomplish this is to be an ‘example’ to your Flock! (1 Timothy 4:12 Hebrews 8:5 James 5:10 1 Peter 2:21)

III. SHEPHERD:
The term “Shepherd” is used many times in the Bible and is used synonymously with the term “Pastor” in both the Old and the New Testament. In fact, in the New Testament the Greek word for “Shepherd” is ‘poimen’ (4166), which is the same word in the Greek that is used for “Pastor”.

Although some of the following Scriptures are used to describe actual “Shepherds” in the field, I believe the work that they do and the responsibilities that they have are also synonymous with the work of “Pastors” in God’s Churches.

A. THE DEFINITION OF THE TERM SHEPHERD:
The following is what the Dictionary states are the meanings for the word “Shepherd” in English. Of course these meanings may not all be Biblically accurate and are added only for your information.

Definition in the Dictionary:
SHEPHERD
1. A person who tends or looks after Sheep.
2. Somebody who is responsible for caring for and guiding a group of people, especially a Christian Minister.
3. A person, such as a Clergyman, who watches over or guides a group of people.
4. To guide or watch over in the manner of a Shepherd.
5. Female equivalent: ‘Shepherdess’ - which is a woman or girl who tends Sheep.
6. Related: ‘bucolic’ - which is of or relating to Shepherds or Herdsmen.
7. Related: ‘pastoral’ - which is of or relating to, or composed of Shepherds or Herdsmen; also of or relating to Spiritual care or guidance, especially of a Congregation or relating to the Pastor of a Church.

Definition in Hebrew:

OT:7462 ra‘ah (raw-aw’); a primitive root; to tend a flock; i.e. pasture it; intransitively, to graze (literally or figuratively); generally to rule; by extension, to associate with (as a friend):
KJV - break, companion, keep company with, devour, eat up, evil entreat, feed, use as a friend, make friendship with, herdmans, keep [sheeper]-), pastor, shearing house, shepherd, wander, waste.

OT:7473 ro‘iy (ro-ee’); from active participle of OT:7462; pastoral; as noun, a shepherd:
KJV - shepherd.

Definition in Greek:

NT:4166 poimen (poy-mane’); of uncertain affinity; a shepherd (literally or figuratively):
KJV - shepherd, pastor.

NT:750 archipoimen (ar-khee-poy'-mane); from NT:746 and NT:4166; a head shepherd:
KJV - chief shepherd.

B. JESUS OUR EXAMPLE:
Jesus is our example of a “Shepherd”. He is the “Pastor/Shepherd” and ‘Bishop’ (Overseer) of our souls!

1 Pet 2:25
25 For ye were as sheep going astray; but are now returned unto the Shepherd (4166 - Pastor) and Bishop (Overseer) of your souls.

Jesus Christ is the one that Calls you to be a “Pastor/Shepherd”. (Ephesians 4:8  4:11) He is the one who has suffered for us leaving for us an example that you should follow after His steps.

1 Peter 2:21
21 For even hereunto were ye called: because Christ also suffered for us, leaving us an example, that ye should follow (after) his steps:

Jesus is also our “Chief Shepherd” and when He shall appear, we will receive a Crown of glory that will not fade away. Remember: (Revelation 2:10  3:11)
1 Pet 5:4
4 And when the chief Shepherd shall appear, ye shall receive a crown of glory that fadeth not away.

In the final judgment our “Chief Shepherd” Jesus will divide His ‘Sheep’ from the goats.

Matt 25:31-33
31 When the Son of man shall come in his glory, and all the holy angels with him, then shall he sit upon the throne of his glory:
32 And before him shall be gathered all nations: and he shall separate them one from another, as a shepherd divideth his sheep from the goats:
33 And he shall set the sheep on his right hand, but the goats on the left.

C. THE GOOD SHEPHERD:
Jesus Christ is also known as the “Good Shepherd”. As a “Pastor/Shepherd” you too should strive to become a “Good Shepherd” just like Jesus.

‘Good’ in the Greek is:

NT:2570 kalos (kal-os’); of uncertain affinity; properly, beautiful, but chiefly (figuratively) good (literally or morally), i.e. valuable or virtuous (for appearance or use, and thus distinguished from NT:18, which is properly intrinsic):
KJV - better, fair, good (ly), honest, meet, well, worthy.

To become a “Good Shepherd” just like Jesus, you need to be willing to give your life which means to give all your breath, heart, mind and soul for your Sheep (‘Flock’).

John 10:11-18
11 I am the good shepherd: the good shepherd giveth his life for the sheep (4263 - ‘probaton’ a sheep-fold).

The “Good Shepherd” is not just a ‘hireling’ (a wage worker or hired servant) because a ‘hireling’ has an attitude that the Sheep are not his, neither does he care for the Sheep!
A “Pastor/Shepherd” that treats his Call from God as just a job, will most likely desert the Sheep when trials come.

12 But he that is an hireling (a wage-worker or hired servant), and not the shepherd, whose own the sheep are not, seeth the wolf coming, and leaveth the sheep, and fleeth: and the wolf catcheth them, and scattereth the sheep.
13 The hireling fleeth, because he is an hireling (a wage-worker or hired servant), and careth not for the sheep.

The “Good Shepherd” knows his Sheep and the Sheep know him. The question is how well do you know your Sheep (‘Flock’) and how well do they know you?
14 I am the good shepherd (4166), and know my sheep, and am known of mine.

The “Good Shepherd” knows his Father God and Father God knows him. This relationship is what gives “Pastors/Shepherds” the strength and courage to lay down their life (breath, heart, mind and soul) for their Sheep (‘Flock’).

15 As the Father knoweth me, even so know I the Father: and I lay down my life for the sheep (4263).

Speaking about the Gentiles, Jesus stated that there are other Sheep that were not of the Sheepfold of the Jews. Jesus stated that these Gentiles would hear His voice and they would become a part of His ‘Flock’. The results will eventually be that there will be one “Flock” and one “Shepherd”.
(1 Corinthians 12:12-13)

16 And other sheep (4263) I have, which are not of this fold (833 - sheepfold): them (the Gentiles) also I must bring, and they shall hear my voice; and there shall be one fold (4167 - flock), and one shepherd (4166).

Jesus uses Himself as an example in the following Scripture. Although this Scripture may not mean that God the Father wants you as a “Pastor/Shepherd” to literally give up your life for your ‘Flock’, Jesus stated that God the Father loves Him because He willingly laid down His Life for others. God the Father also Loves those of you who will willingly lay down your life (breath, heart, mind and soul) for your ‘Flock’.

17 Therefore doth my Father love me, because I lay down my life (‘psuche’ - breath, heart, mind and soul), that I might take it again.

Jesus states that just like Him, you have been given the power and authority to do this, but you must take the initiative to do it!

18 No man taketh it from me, but I lay it down of myself. I have power (exousia - authority) to lay it down, and I have power (exousia - authority) to take it again. This commandment have I received of my Father.

The question becomes: Are you a “Good Shepherd”? (Good meaning literally or morally, valuable or virtuous, fair, honest and worthy) If not, you might want to Repent and get right with Jesus!!

D. THE OLD TESTAMENT EXAMPLES OF JESUS AS A SHEPHERD:
The following are various descriptions of Jesus in the Old Testament that gives us an example of a “Pastor/Shepherd” and how to Minister to your ‘Flock’.

Here in Jacob’s prophecy concerning his sons, Joseph is mentioned as a ‘fruitful bough’ which means he as a son would be a builder of the family name. This is compared to a ‘fruitful tree’ that is planted by a well or fountain and whose branches run over a surrounding wall. Though now living well, Jacob reminds Joseph of the problems he had gone through when he was persecuted by his many enemies. He also reminds him that his strength that overcame his enemies was from the mighty God of Jacob. The “Shepherd” that is mentioned here as the Headstone of Israel is of course Jesus!
Gen 49:22-24

22 Joseph is a fruitful bough (son - as a builder of the family name), even a fruitful bough (fruitful tree) by a well (fountain); whose branches run over the wall:
23 The archers have sorely grieved him, and shot at him, and hated him:
24 But his bow abode in strength, and the arms of his hands were made strong by the hands of the mighty God of Jacob; (from thence (therein) is the shepherd (7462), the stone (the building or head stone) of Israel:)

Thus must the “Pastor/Shepherd’s” strength to overcome problems of adversity and temptations, come from the Mighty God and His “Shepherd” Jesus Christ who is the Head Stone of Israel. Here the “Shepherd” Jesus is mentioned as the One that led Joseph like a ‘Flock’.

Ps 80:1

1 To the chief Musician upon Sho-shan'-nim-E'-duth, A Psalm of A'-saph. Give ear, O Shepherd (7462) of Israel, thou that leadest Joseph like a flock (6629); thou that dwellest between the cherubims, shine forth.

The following in the Old Testament is a Prophetic description of the “Shepherd” Jesus and what He would endure during His Crucifixion.

Zech 13:6

6 And one shall say unto him, What are these wounds in thine hands? Then he shall answer, Those with which I was wounded (5221 - beaten, struck, smitten, given stripes) in the house of my friends.

When you smite the “Shepherd”, the Sheep will scatter! This is what happened to Israel.

Zech 13:7

7 Awake, O sword, against my shepherd (7473), and against the man that is my fellow, saith the LORD of hosts: smite the shepherd (7462), and the sheep shall be scattered:

However, He that scattered Israel has once again gathered them together as a “Shepherd” does his ‘Flock’ in 1948!

Jer 31:10

10 Hear the word of the LORD, O ye nations, and declare it in the isles afar off, and say, He that scattered Israel will gather him, and keep (guard, protect, attend to, observe, preserve, regard, reserve, and to watch) him, as a shepherd (7462) doth his flock.

Although Israel has been gathered as a Nation, two-thirds of Israel will be cut off and die. The rest will be tested by fire; however, a third (which is a Remnant) will be Saved!

Zech 13:8-9

8 And it shall come to pass, that in all the land, saith the LORD, two parts therein shall be cut off and die; but the third shall be left therein.
9 And I will bring the third part through the fire, and will refine them as silver is refined, and will
try (test) them as gold is tried (tested): they shall call on my name, and I will hear them: I will say, It is my people: and they shall say, The LORD is my God.

When the Lord returns, He shall come with a mighty hand and His out stretched arm will rule for Him. His compensation will be with Him and His work before Him. ( Isaiah 62:11  Revelation 22:12)

**Isa 40:10**
10 Behold, the Lord GOD will come with strong (a mighty) hand, and his arm (stretched out) shall rule for him: behold, his reward (compensation) is with him, and his work before him.

**Ezek 34:23**
23 And I will set up one shepherd (7462) over them, and he shall feed (7462) them, even my servant David; he shall feed (7462) them, and he shall be their shepherd (7462).

He will Feed (or tend) His ‘Flock’ like a true “Shepherd” (that is a friend). (John 15:15-16) He will gather those lambs that (need protection) with His out stretched arm and will gently lead those that are pregnant.

This is an example that you as a “Pastor/Shepherd” should follow, and as a ‘friend’ gently lead your ‘Flock’ (which means to protect, sustain, carry, feed, and guide them).

(Read the Study Guide “Friend” written by Timothy II)

**Isa 40:11**
11 He shall feed (7462 - tend) his flock (5739) like a shepherd (7462 - as a friend): he shall gather the lambs (for protection) with his arm (stretched out), and carry them in his bosom, and shall gently lead (protect, sustain, carry, feed, and guide) those that are with young.

**E. THE LORD IS MY SHEPHERD:**
The ‘Lord is my Shepherd’ is a Psalm of David. When it is used in the Churches it is usually meant for and recited by the ‘Flock’. However, God the Holy Spirit has inserted it here to remind you as a “Pastor/Shepherd” that Jesus is also the “Shepherd” over all the “Shepherds”.

Therefore, as you read this Psalm, no matter what your situation is as a “Pastor/Shepherd”, let it nourish you from the inside out and restore you from the top of your head to the bottom of your feet in Jesus Name! Amen!

**Ps 23:1-6**
1 A Psalm of David. The LORD is my shepherd (7462); I shall not want (lack or fail).
2 He maketh me to lie down (sit or rest) in green pastures: he leadeth me (protects, sustains and feeds me) beside the still (peaceful, comfortable, quiet and resting) waters.
3 He restoreth (continually builds, rejoices, brings back, delivers and refreshes again) my soul: he leadeth me (brings, guides and straightens me) in the paths of righteousness for his name’s sake.
4 Yea, though I walk through the valley of the shadow of death, I will fear no evil (adversity, affliction, bad, calamity, distress, grief, harm, hurt, mischief, misery, sorrow, trouble, wickedness, or wrong): for thou art with me; thy rod (a stick for punishing, fighting, ruling and correction) and thy staff (for support and sustenance) they comfort me.
5 Thou preparest (arranges, puts in order, furnishes and sets in order) a table before me in the presence of (in front of, before, over against, or in sight of) mine enemies: thou anointest my head with oil; my cup runneth over (with satisfaction).
Surely goodness (good things, the best, better, bountiful, cheerful, joyful, loving, merry, pleasant, precious, prosperity and sweetness) and mercy (loving kindness, beauty and favor) shall follow me all the days of my life: and I will dwell (abide, inhabit, continue and remain) in the house of the LORD forever.

Amen!

F. FEED THE FLOCK:
As mentioned in Section E under “Pastor”, one of the main requirements and responsibilities of the “Pastor/Shepherd” is to ‘Feed the Flock’ of God. This means that above all things you are to Teach your ‘Flock’ the True Word of God which is ‘THE BIBLE’!

Thus when you are preparing to ‘Feed the Flock’ that God has given you, instead of studying all the Books, Commentaries, Biographies, Christian Books, etc., that are written by men, REMEMBER TO DO THIS!

- Get in a quiet place, (Matthew 6:6)
- Pray to God the Father, (Matthew 6:6)
- Commune with God, (Matthew 6:7-8)
- Let God the Holy Ghost (Spirit) lead you in the message that He would have you to give; (1 John 2:27 1 Corinthians 2:13)
- Then give Thanks to the Lord. (Psalms 136:1-3 1 Timothy 1:11-12)

Remember you younger “Pastors” that it is God the Holy Ghost (Spirit) that will Teach you all things; and you older “Pastors” it is He that will help you to Remember whatsoever things Jesus has spoken in His Word.

John 14:26
26 But the Comforter, which is the Holy Ghost (Spirit), whom the Father will send in my name, he shall teach you all things (always, everything, thoroughly, whatsoever, whosoever and the whole), and bring all things to your remembrance (to remind quietly, to put in mind, to remember), whatsoever I have said unto you.

One of the main reasons you need to ‘Feed your Flock’ with the Words of ‘The Bible’ is because it has been written for your learning which includes (your instruction, doctrine and teaching), so that you through the patience and comfort of the Scriptures will provide your ‘Flock’ with ‘Hope’.

Rom 15:4
4 For whatsoever things were written aforetime (previously) were written for our learning (instruction, doctrine and teaching), that we through patience (cheerful or hopeful endurance, or patient continuous waiting) and comfort (consolation or exhortation) of the scriptures might have hope (expectation, confidence, and anticipation with pleasure).

Also know this that no Prophecy of the Scripture is of one’s own interpretation or explanation. This is because no Prophecy of the Bible came by the will of man, but Holy men of God spoke as they were moved by God the Holy Ghost (Spirit).

2 Peter 1:20-21
20 Knowing this first, that no prophecy of the scripture is of any private (one’s own or their own)
interpretation (explanation or application).

21 For the prophecy came not in old time (in time past) by the will (determination, choice, purpose, inclination, desire or pleasure) of man: but holy men of God spake as they were moved (led or driven) by the Holy Ghost.

In these last days, you can never go wrong if when you ‘Preach the Word’ to your ‘Flock’, you do so according to this Scripture:

2 Tim 4:2-4
2 Preach (to herald, especially divine truth ‘the gospel’, and/or to proclaim and publish) the word (logos); be instant (be at hand) in season (whether convenient), out of season (or inconvenient); reprove (convict, convince), rebuke (admonish, censure, forbid), exhort (implore, beseech, comfort, and entreat - which is to plead with especially in order to persuade) with all longsuffering (patience) and doctrine.

The Amplified Bible states it this way:

2 Tim 4:2-4
2 Herald and Preach the Word! Keep your sense of urgency (stand by, be at hand and ready, whether the opportunity seems to be favorable or unfavorable, whether it is convenient or inconvenient, whether it be welcome or unwelcome, you as Preacher of the Word are to show people in what way their lives are wrong) and convince them, rebuking and correcting, warning and urging and encouraging them, being unflagging (unwavering) and inexhaustible in patience and Teaching.

As prophesied in the Old Testament I believe that Jesus is currently setting up His own “Pastors/Shepherds” over His ‘Flock’ because the Sheep of the Lord’s Pasture have been scattered. (Jeremiah 23:2)

This will include some who are “Pastors/Shepherds” now and some it will not. (Revelation 2:5)

The results and/or proof of Jesus setting up His own “Pastors/Shepherds” is when they ‘Feed the Flock’, the ‘Flock’ will no longer be afraid, nor be dismayed nor will they be lacking.

Jer 23:4
4 And I will set up shepherds (7462) over them which shall feed (7462) them: and they shall fear no more (be afraid), nor be dismayed (be confused, discouraged, break down or be beaten down), neither shall they be lacking (at all, be empty or hurt), saith the LORD.

Here Peter exhorts the older “Pastors/Shepherds” to ‘Feed the Flock’ of God because at their age they should be able to do so without constraint (without being mandatory, being compelled to, or without necessity), and to do it willingly. God is looking for you older “Pastors/Shepherds” today that are not looking for ‘filthy lucre’ (gain or greed). Unfortunately, many “Pastors” today are selling the ‘Word of God’ on the Radio, TV, or in Books, CDs, DVDs, etc. Remember, God the Holy Spirit has imparted this Knowledge and Power of the Holy Scriptures to you Freely; therefore, Freely you have received, Freely give it away! (Matthew 10:7-8)

1 Peter 5:1-3
The elders (older or seniors or Christian Presbyter) which are among you I exhort (call near, invite, invoke, implore, beseech, desire, intreat and/or pray), who am also an elder (Presbyter), and a witness of the sufferings of Christ, and also a partaker of the glory that shall be revealed:

Feed (4165) the flock of God which is among you, taking the oversight thereof, not by constraint (without being mandatory, being compelled to, or without necessity), but willingly; not for filthy lucre (gain or greed), but of a ready (willing mind) mind;

Even though God has Called you “Pastors/Shepherds” to ‘Feed the Flock’ of God that He has given you, do not try to be lords over your ‘Flock’, but rather be an example to them!

Neither as being lords over (neither lord against, control, subjugate, nor exercise dominion over) God's heritage (portion, inheritance, or part), but being ensamples (models or patterns) to the flock.

In concluding this section on “Feed the Flock”, here is a Word to the Wise “Pastor/Shepherd” which is given from our ‘One Shepherd’:

Eccl 12:11
11 The words of the wise (wise hearted, intelligent and skilful) are as goads (something that urges or stimulates or pains as if by pricking), and as nails fastened by the masters of assemblies (a collection of learned men), which are given from one shepherd (7462).

“Pastor/Shepherd” as a Son be admonished (given warning) that of the making of many Books there is no end, and much study if it is not of God is a weariness of the flesh. Yet today we are inundated with all kinds of Books including many so-called Christian Books that are meaningless and/or of little substance. (2 Timothy 3:7) Reading and/or studying these Books can take away valuable time from your reading and studying the ‘Word of God’ – ‘THE BIBLE’!

Eccl 12:12-13
12 And further, by these, my son, be admonished (enlightened by caution, given warning): of making many books there is no end; and much study is a weariness (fatigue) of the flesh.

“Pastor/Shepherd” hear the conclusion or end of the whole matter according to ‘THE BIBLE’!
- Fear God (Exodus 18:21)
- Keep His Commandments. (1 John 5:3 3:24 2:4)
- For this is the whole duty, completion and perfection of man. (Ephesians 4:13-14)

13 Let us hear the conclusion (termination or end) of the whole matter: Fear (fear morally, hold in reverence, be afraid of) God, and keep (guard, protect and attend to, take heed to yourself, observe, preserve, reserve, wait and watch for) his commandments: for this is the whole duty (the whole, the completion and perfection) of man (mankind).

G. HAVE COMPASSION:
As a “Pastor/Shepherd” you should always have ‘Compassion’ when Shepherding your ‘Flock’ and in dealing with people in general. If you do, it will help you to become more successful in areas that you may not have been successful in before.
The meaning of ‘Compassion’ in the Dictionary is:

- A Sympathetic consciousness of others’ distress together with a desire to alleviate it.

The meaning of ‘Compassion’ in Hebrew is:

**OT:7349 rachuwm** (rakh-oom’); from OT:7355; **compassionate**:
KJV - full of compassion, merciful.

The meaning of ‘Compassion’ in Greek is:

**NT:4697 splagchnizomai** (splangkh-nid'-zom-ahee); middle voice from NT:4698; **to have the bowels yearn**, i.e. (figuratively) **feel sympathy, to pity**:
KJV – to have (or be moved with) compassion.
**NT:4698 splagchnon** (splangkh'-non); probably strengthened from splen (the "spleen"); an intestine (plural); figuratively, **pity or sympathy**:
KJV - bowels, or inward affection, tender mercy.
**NT:1653 eleeo** (el-eh-eh'-o); from NT:1656; **to compassionate (by word or deed, specially, by divine grace)**:
KJV - have compassion (pity on), have (obtain, receive, shew) mercy (on).
**NT:4835 sumpathes** (soom-path-ace’); from NT:4841; **having a fellow-feeling ("sympathetic"), (by implication) mutually commiserative - which is to feel or express sympathy or to feel or express sorrow or compassion for**:
KJV - having compassion one of another.

1. OUR EXAMPLE OF HAVING COMPASSION:
The Lord is our best example of ‘Having Compassion’. Here in Psalms the Bible states that the Lord is a God that is ‘Full of ‘Compassion’!

**Ps 86:15**
15 But thou, O Lord, art a God full of compassion (7349), and gracious, longsuffering, and plenteous in mercy and truth.

**Ps 111:4**
4 He hath made his wonderful works to be remembered: the LORD is gracious and full of compassion (7349).

**Ps 112:4**
4 Unto the upright there ariseth light in the darkness: he is gracious, and full of compassion (7349), and righteous.

**Ps 145:8**
8 The LORD is gracious, and full of compassion (7349); slow to anger, and of great mercy.

Here in Matthew the Bible states that Jesus ‘Moved with Compassion’ on the people because they fainted (or were harassed or troubled) and were moving about as Sheep without a “Shepherd”. This led Jesus to appeal to His disciples to Pray that the Lord would send forth more **laborers** (Teachers) into His Harvest. (1 Corinthians 12:28  Ephesians 4:11)

**Matt 9:36-38 Mark 6:34**
36 But when he saw the multitudes, he was moved with compassion (4697) on them, because they fainted (were harassed or troubled), and were scattered abroad (moving about or thrown about), as sheep having no shepherd (4166).
37 Then saith he unto his disciples, The harvest truly is plenteous (large or great), but the labourers (teachers) are few;
38 Pray ye therefore the Lord of the harvest, that he will send forth labourers (teachers) into his harvest.

Here Jesus had ‘Compassion’ on a man with a Legion of Demons in him and Delivered him. As a “Pastor/Shepherd” you too can do the same. (Luke 10:19-20  Mark 16:17) (Read the Study Guide “Demons” written by Timothy II)

Mark 5:2
2 And when he was come out of the ship, immediately there met him out of the tombs a man with an unclean (foul) spirit (demon),

Mark 5:6
6 But when he saw Jesus afar off, he ran and worshipped (to prostrate oneself in homage, or do reverence to, or adore) him.

Mark 5:8
8 For he said unto him, Come out of the man, thou unclean (foul) spirit (demon).

Mark 5:18-19
18 And when he was come into the ship, he that had been possessed with the devil (demons) prayed (called for or desired for) him that he might be with him.
19 Howbeit Jesus suffered (let or permitted) him not, but saith unto him, Go home to thy friends, and tell them how (what) great things the Lord hath done for thee, and hath had compassion (1653) on thee.

Here when Jesus saw a great multitude, He was ‘Moved with Compassion’ which led Him to Heal the sick. As a “Pastor/Shepherd” you can do the same. (1 Corinthians 12:9  12:28) (Read the Study Guide “Healing - in the Last Days” written by Timothy II)

Matt 14:14
14 And Jesus went forth, and saw a great multitude, and was moved with compassion (4697) toward them, and he healed (to relieve of disease, or to cure) their sick.

Matt 20:34
34 So Jesus had compassion (4697) on them, and touched their eyes: and immediately their eyes received sight, and they followed him.

Mark 1:41-42
41 And Jesus, moved with compassion (4697), put forth his hand, and touched him, and saith unto him, I will; be thou clean.
42 And as soon as he had spoken, immediately the leprosy departed from him, and he was cleansed.

Here Jesus ‘Moved with Compassion’ on a multitude that had been with Him for three days with nothing to eat. This led to His performing the Miracle of the multiplication of the ‘Loaves and Fishes’. As a “Pastor/Shepherd” you can do the same. (Acts 15:12  19:11  1 Corinthians 12:10  12:28
Hebrews 2:4

Matt 15:32
32 Then Jesus called his disciples unto him, and said, I have compassion (4697) on the multitude, because they continue with me now three days, and have nothing to eat: and I will not send them away fasting (not eating), lest they faint in (on) the way.

Matt 15:35-38
35 And he commanded the multitude to sit down on the ground.
36 And he took the seven loaves (of bread) and the fishes, and gave thanks, and brake them, and gave to his disciples, and the disciples to the multitude.
37 And they did all eat, and were filled: and they took up of the broken meat that was left seven baskets full.
38 And they that did eat were four thousand men, beside women and children.

Here Jesus had ‘Compassion’ on a Widow and He performed a Miracle by raising her dead son. Although this doesn’t happen very often, I have personally witnessed this in the Philippines!

Luke 7:12-15
12 Now when he (Jesus) came nigh to the gate of the city, behold, there was a dead man carried out, the only son of his mother, and she was a widow: and much people of the city was with her.
13 And when the Lord saw her, he had compassion (4697) on her, and said unto her, Weep not.
14 And he came and touched the bier (coffin): and they that bare (carried) him stood still. And he said, Young man, I say unto thee, Arise.
15 And he that was dead sat up, and began to speak. And he delivered him to his mother.

2. THE SHEPHERD’S COMPASSION:
As a “Pastor/Shepherd” you need to have ‘Compassion’ on your Brethren and on other “Christian Leaders”. Even though they may have ‘fallen’ or ‘departed from the Faith’; if you have ‘Compassion’ on them you may be able to make a difference in their lives and help to reconfirm their Salvation and Recommitment to the Lord. (1 Timothy 4:1 James 5:19-20)

Jude 16-23
16 These are murmurers (grumblers), complainers (discontented), walking after their own lusts (a longing - especially for what is forbidden); and their mouth speaketh great swelling (insolent) words, having men's persons (presence or appearance) in admiration because of advantage (usefulness, benefit, or profit).
17 But, beloved, remember ye the words which were spoken before of the apostles of our Lord Jesus Christ:
18 How that they told you there should be mockers (scoffers or false teachers) in the last time, who should walk after their own ungodly lusts (a longing - especially for what is forbidden).
19 These be they who separate (disjoin) themselves, sensual (natural or bestial nature), having not the (Holy) Spirit.
20 But ye, beloved, building up yourselves on your most holy faith, praying in the Holy Ghost.
21 Keep yourselves in the love of God, looking for the mercy of our Lord Jesus Christ unto eternal life.
You can make a difference in these person’s lives if you have ‘Compassion’ on them and Love them, even though you may consider them your enemies. (Matthew 5:44  Luke 6:27-28)

22 And of some have compassion (1653), making a difference (to those who have withdrawn or separated themselves or those that oppose themselves or that are wavering):

Others can be Saved through FEAR. So they need to be reminded of the message on HELL!

23 And others save with fear (exceeding fear, terror, alarm or fright), pulling them out of the fire; hating even the garment spotted by the flesh.

3. FINALLY:
As “Pastors/Shepherds” you should be of ‘One Mind’ having ‘Compassion’ on one another; also to Love as Brethren, to be sympathetic and tenderhearted to one another, and to be courteous and humble minded to each other!

1 Peter 3:8
8 Finally, be ye all of one mind, having compassion (4835) one of another, love as brethren, be pitiful (sympathetic, tenderhearted), be courteous (humble-minded):

H. THE DISOBEDEDIENT SHEPHERD:
A ‘Disobedient Shepherd’ basically comes in two categories:

1. He that calls himself a “Shepherd” but has not actually been Called by Jesus Christ.
   (John 10:1-2  10:7)
2. He that has been Called by Jesus Christ but has ‘Fallen’ or is ‘Backslidden’.
   (Revelation 2:1  2:4-5)

In the following Scriptures, the ‘Disobedient Shepherd’ has caused his Sheep to go astray (to be deceived or seduced, or to error, to wander or to be out of the way).
He has caused his Sheep to wander from mountain to hill where there is no rest, and he has forgotten his former resting-place. (Hebrews 4:10-11)
(Read the Study Guide “The Christian’s Rest” written by Timothy II)

Jer 50:6-7
6 My people hath been lost (caused to perish or destroyed) sheep: their shepherds (7462) have caused them to go astray (to be deceived or seduced, or to error, to wander or to be out of the way), they have turned them away on the mountains: they have gone from mountain to hill, they have forgotten their resting-place.

Because the Sheep have been exposed in their wanderings, all that have found them have devoured them. Their enemies however say that they have not offended God because the Sheep have no ‘Leadership’, and have Sinned against the Lord because they have left their place of rest, and even the Lord, the hope of their ancestors.

7 All that found them have devoured them: and their adversaries (enemies) said, We offend not, because they have sinned against the LORD, the habitation (pasture, fold, home, dwelling place or
pleasant place) of justice, even the LORD, the hope (confidence or something waited for) of their fathers.

1. WARNINGS TO THE DISOBEDIENT SHEPHERDS:
The following Scriptures are Warnings to those who are ‘Disobedient Shepherds’. These Warnings to the ‘Disobedient Shepherds’ come from “The Shepherd of Shepherds”.

‘To Feed’ in Hebrew is the same word that is used for a “Pastor/Shepherd”:

OT:7462 ra`ah (raw-aw’); a primitive root; to tend a flock; i.e. pasture it; intransitively, to graze (literally or figuratively); generally to rule; by extension, to associate with (as a friend):
KJV - break, companion, keep company with, devour, eat up, evil entreat, feed, use as a friend, make friendship with, herdmam, keep [sheeper]-), pastor, shearing house, shepherd, wander, waste.

‘To Feed’ in the Dictionary means:
- To give food to.
- To give as food.
- To produce or provide food for.
- To become nourished or satisfied or sustained as if by food.
- To become channeled or directed.
- To furnish something essential to the development, sustenance, maintenance, or operation of the mind.

Here “The Shepherd of Shepherds” states “Woe be to you that Feed yourselves and do not Feed the Flock”.

Ezek 34:1-3
1 And the word of the LORD came unto me, saying, 2 Son of man, prophesy (speak by inspiration) against the shepherds (7462) of Israel, prophesy, and say unto them, Thus saith the Lord GOD unto the shepherds (7462); Woe be to the shepherds (7462) of Israel that do feed (7462) themselves! should not the shepherds (7462) feed (7462) the flocks?

The following is a Warning from the Lord God to those disobedient “Pastors/Shepherds” who misuse the Doctrine of ‘God’s Prosperity’. According to the Scriptures the disobedient “Pastors/Shepherds” gratify and indulge themselves in their own appetites by eating the fat, or the best or choice part of everything. They make themselves rich and great by clothing themselves with the best and the fanciest clothes. They kill those that are fed, which means that the ‘Disobedient Shepherds’ take from those that are well off and attempt to obtain their finances by siphoning off their offerings and/or their inheritances which should go their families. At the same time the ‘Disobedient Shepherds’ do not Feed the ‘Flock’.

3 Ye eat the fat (best or choice part), and ye clothe you (clothe yourself) with the wool, ye kill them that are fed (fatted or plump): but ye feed (7462) not the flock.

This greed will cause the ‘Disobedient Shepherds’ to never have enough and they cannot understand or distinguish why. This lack of understanding will often lead to the misuse of alcohol.
Isa 56:11-12
11 Yea, they are greedy dogs which can never have enough, and they are shepherds (7462) that cannot understand (separate mentally or distinguish): they all look to their own way, every one for his gain (covetousness, lucre, profit, or dishonest gain), from his quarter.
12 Come ye, say they, I will fetch wine, and we will fill ourselves with strong drink; and tomorrow shall be as this day, and much more abundant.

The ‘Disobedient Shepherds’ that do not believe in or move in Healings do not strengthen the diseased (weak, afflicted or wounded) nor Heal the sick. They do not offer help or support for the broken-hearted nor do they help to restore those that are perhaps by some misunderstanding driven away. The ‘Disobedient Shepherds’ do not seek after those that are lost and that need to hear and to be given the opportunity to receive the Salvation message. (This can easily be done by having a time for people to come forward in your Church Services to receive Jesus in their heart as their Lord and Savior!)
Instead the ‘Disobedient Shepherds’ rule over their Churches with force and cruelty (which means they lack pity, kindness and mercy).

Ezek 34:4-6
4 The diseased (2470 - weak, afflicted and/or wounded) have ye not strengthened, neither have ye healed that which was sick (2470 - that which has a grievous infirmity, pain or travail), neither have ye bound up that which was broken (down, in pieces, broken hearted, crushed or destroyed), neither have ye brought (back) again that which was driven away, neither have ye sought that which was lost; but with force (vehemence - which is marked by forceful energy and is intensely emotional, deeply felt, forcibly expressed and bitterly antagonistic) and with cruelty (inhuman treatment which is lacking pity, kindness, or mercy) have ye ruled them.

The ‘Disobedient Shepherds’ cause their ‘Flocks’ to become scattered because there is no True “Shepherd”. They cause their ‘Flocks’ to wander and they do not search nor seek after them.

5 And they were scattered (dashed in pieces and dispersed), because there is no shepherd (7462): and they became meat (food) to all the beasts of the field, when they were scattered (dashed in pieces and dispersed).
6 My sheep wandered through all the mountains, and upon every high hill: yea, my flock was scattered (dashed in pieces and dispersed) upon all the face of the earth, and none did search or seek after them.

J. THE PUNISHMENT OF THE DISOBEDIENT SHEPHERDS:
The following Scriptures reveal why God will punish the ‘Disobedient Shepherds’.
Notice here that God states that you are His “Shepherd” and your ‘Flock’ is His ‘Flock’!
Hear the Word of the Lord!

Ezek 34:7-12
7 Therefore, ye shepherds (7462), hear the word of the LORD:
8 As I live, saith the Lord GOD, surely because my flock became a prey, and my flock became meat (food) to every beast of the field, because there was no shepherd (7462), neither did my shepherds (7462) search for my flock, but the shepherds (7462) fed (7462) themselves, and fed (7462) not my flock:
9 Therefore, O ye shepherds (7462), hear the word of the LORD:

The punishment of God to the ‘Disobedient Shepherds’ is that they will cease to ‘Feed His Flock’; neither will they be able to ‘Feed’ themselves anymore, because the Lord will deliver His ‘Flock’ from them.

10 Thus saith the Lord GOD; Behold, I am against the shepherds (7462); and I will require my flock at their hand, and cause them to cease from feeding (7462) the flock; neither shall the shepherds (7462) feed (7462) themselves anymore; for I will deliver my flock from their mouth (speech, talk or words), that they may not be meat (food) for them.

The Lord will search (and is still searching today) for His Sheep that have been scattered, and He will deliver them out of all the places that they have been scattered.

11 For thus saith the Lord GOD; Behold, I, even I, will both search my sheep, and seek them out.
12 As a shepherd (7462) seeketh out his flock in the day that he is among his sheep that are scattered (dispersed and wounded); so will I seek out my sheep, and will deliver them out of all places where they have been scattered (dashed in pieces and dispersed) in the cloudy and dark day.

Because of the ‘Disobedience of the Shepherds’, the ‘Lord of Hosts’ will break in pieces or scatter the “Shepherd” and the ‘Flock’ and all those that are with him. (Jeremiah 51:19)

Jer 51:23
23 I will also break in pieces (scatter or disperse) with thee the shepherd (7462) and his flock; and with thee will I break in pieces (scatter or disperse) the husbandman (ploughman which is one that plows and/or cultivates) and his yoke of oxen (team); and with thee will I break in pieces (scatter or disperse) captains (assistants or deputies) and rulers (superintendents or those with executive oversight or charge).

Here the Lord is angered against the ‘Disobedient Shepherds’ because their ‘Flocks’ had sought idols and diviners for the answers to their questions. They were told lies and told false dreams and the ‘Flocks’ were comforted in vain (emptiness). Therefore the ‘Flocks’ continued being troubled (depressed) because there were no TRUE “Shepherds”.

Zech 10:2-3
2 For the idols have spoken vanity (strictly nothingness), and the diviners (those that practice divination or a soothsayer - which is a person who determines by lot or magical scroll, or predicts the future by magical, intuitive, or more rational means) have seen a lie, and have told false dreams; they comfort in vain (emptiness); therefore they went their way as a flock, they were troubled (depressed), because there was no shepherd (7462).

Because the Lord was angered He punished the ‘Disobedient Shepherds’ who here are called ‘Goats’, which in Hebrew can also mean the ‘Leaders of people’. (Matthew 25:31-33)
Then the Lord of Hosts visited His ‘Flock’ with favor, and He beautified the ‘Flock’ as a goodly (an imposing form and appearance) horse ready for battle. (Revelation 19:11 19:14)
Mine anger was kindled against the shepherds, and I punished the goats (leaders of people): for the LORD of hosts hath visited his flock the house of Judah, and hath made them as his goodly (an imposing form and appearance) horse in the battle.

In these Last Days, there are some ‘Disobedient Shepherds’ that are leading God’s Churches who have become ‘Foolish Shepherds’ and/or ‘Idol Shepherds’. You shall know them by their fruits! (Matthew 7:16-20)

Here the Prophet Zechariah is asked by God to impersonate a ‘Foolish Shepherd’ by taking the instruments (or stuff) that a ‘Foolish Shepherd’ would use and/or wear! This was done to represent to the people the type of “Shepherd” that God would set over Israel. (Matthew 23:2-7)

Zech 11:15-17

And the LORD said unto me, Take unto thee yet the instruments (implements or stuff) of a foolish (silly or morally impious - which means lacking in reverence or proper respect for God) shepherd (7462).

The following is a description of the actions or lack thereof of the ‘Foolish Shepherd’:

- They will not visit the cut down or ‘desolate’ - which means the abandoned, deserted, separated, neglected, joyless, and sorrowful.
- They will neither search out nor strive after the young ones from infancy to adolescence.
- They will not heal the broken-hearted, crushed or hurting.
- They will not feed or nourish those that are upright in heart, nor those in ‘Church Leadership’.
- They will however live in luxury.
- They will consume the finances of those that are financially blessed (the fat and plump).
- Because of their appetites, they will also drive their ‘Flock’ unmercifully until their feet (hoofs) are beaten into the ground.

For, lo, I will raise up a shepherd (7462) in the land, which shall not visit those that be cut off (cut down or desolate), neither shall seek (search out or strive after) the young one (from infancy to adolescence), nor heal that that is broken (broken hearted, crushed or hurting), nor feed (guide or nourish) that that standeth still (upright or is established, or in the best state or set over): but he shall eat (consume or devour) the flesh of the fat (fatted or plump), and tear their claws (hoofs) in pieces.

Here the ‘Foolish Shepherd’ is called an ‘Idol Shepherd’. This is not because he is lazy, but rather because he is ‘Idolized’. He is treated like an ‘Idol’ with the respect that the ‘Flock’ gives him, and also with the abundance given of the ‘Flocks’ tithes and offerings. This is in spite of this ‘Idol Shepherd’ always leaving the ‘Flock’ and that is never there in their time of need! Woe be to this ‘Idol Shepherd’ that leaves his ‘Flock’ for he will be justly rewarded!

Woe to the idol (good for nothing, vain, of no value, thing of naught; specifically an idol) shepherd (7473) that leaveth (that fails or forsakes) the flock! the sword shall be upon his arm, and upon his right eye: his arm shall be clean dried up, and his right eye shall be utterly darkened.

The reward for this ‘Idol Shepherd’ is that the ‘two-edged’ sword of the Lord will come down upon his arm and upon his right eye. This most likely means a ‘stroke’, and will cause the ‘Idol Shepherd’s right
arm to dry up and the right eye to go blind. In the end, this will cause the ‘Idol Shepherd’ to no longer lead the ‘Flock’. Thus will the Lord’s *justice* be done!

**IV. MINISTER:**
The term “Minister” is used many times in the Bible and is used synonymously with the term “Pastor” both in the Old and the New Testament.

**A. THE DEFINITION OF THE TERM MINISTER:**
The following is what the Dictionary states are the meanings for the word “Minister” in English. Of course some of these meanings may not all be Biblically accurate and are added only for your information.

**Definition in the Dictionary:**

**MINISTER**
1. A member of the clergy of a Christian Church, especially a Protestant one.
2. A clergyman especially of a Protestant Communion.
3. A person authorized to conduct religious worship; member of the clergy; Pastor.
4. To perform the functions of a religious Minister.
5. The Superior in some orders in the Roman Catholic Church.
6. The Superior of one of several religious orders - called also Minister-General.
7. One officiating or assisting the Officiant in Church Worship.
8. A person authorized to administer Sacraments, as at Mass.
9. The assistant to the Rector or the Bursar of a Jesuit House.

**Definition in Hebrew:**

**OT:8334 sharith** (shaw-rath'); a primitive root; to attend as a menial or worshipper; figuratively, to contribute to:

KJV - *minister* (unto), (do) *serve* (-ant, -ice, -itor), wait on.

**OT:3547 kahan** (kaw-han'); a primitive root, apparently meaning *to mediate in religious services*; but used only as denominative from OT:3548; *to officiate as a priest*; figuratively, to put on regalia:

KJV - *deck*, be (do the office of a, execute the, minister in the) *priest* ('s office).

**Definition in Greek:**

**NT:1249 diakonas** (dee-ak'-on-os); probably from an obsolete diako (to run on errands; compare NT:1377); an attendant, i.e. (genitive case) a waiter (at table or in other menial duties); specially, a Christian teacher and pastor (technically, a deacon or deaconess):

KJV - *deacon, minister, servant*.

**NT:1248 diakonia** (dee-ak-on-ee'-ah); from NT:1249; attendance (as a servant, etc.); figuratively (eleemosynary) aid, (official) *service* (especially of the Christian teacher, or techn. of the diaconate):

KJV - (ad-) *minister* (-ing, -tration, -try), *office*, relief, *service* (-ing).

**NT:1247 diakoneo** (dee-ak-on-eh'-o); from NT:1249; to be an attendant, i.e. wait upon (menially or as a
host, friend, or [figuratively] teacher); techn. to act as a Christian deacon:
KJV - (ad-) minister (unto), serve, use the office of a deacon.

NT:5257 huperetes (hoop-ay-ret'-ace); from NT:5259 and a derivative of eresso (to row); an under-oarsman, i.e. (generally) subordinate (assistant, sexton, constable):
KJV - minister, officer, servant.

NT:3011 leitourgos (li-toorg-os'); from a derivative of NT:2992 and NT:2041; a public servant, i.e. a functionary in the Temple or Gospel, or (genitive case) a worshipper (of God) or benefactor (of man):
KJV - minister (-ed).

NT:2418 hierourgeo (hee-er-oorg-eh'-o); from a compound of NT:2411 and the base of NT:2041; to be a temple-worker, i.e. officiate as a priest (figuratively):
KJV - minister.

B. JESUS OUR EXAMPLE:
Jesus is our greatest example of a “Pastor/Minister”. He came to earth to ‘Minister’ and took it one step further by giving His life as a ransom for many.

Matt 20:28 Mark 10:45
28 Even as the Son of man came not to be ministered (1247) unto, but to minister (1247), and to give his life a ransom (an atonement or a redemption price) for many.

Paul states here that Jesus was a “Minister” of the Jews for the Truth of God and to confirm and establish the promises made to their fathers.

Rom 15:8
8 Now I say that Jesus Christ was a minister (1249) of the circumcision (Jews) for the truth of God, to confirm (establish) the promises (the divine assurances) made unto the fathers:

C. THE CALL OF THE MINISTER:
As mentioned earlier, a “Pastor/Minister” is Called by Jesus Christ as part of the “Five Fold Ministry”. (Ephesians 4:8 4:11)

In the following Scriptures Saul (who later became Paul the Apostle) is Called as a “Minister” by Jesus Christ who appeared to him on the road to Damascus. (Acts 9:1-6)

Jesus first said to Saul/Paul: Why do you persecute me?

To persecute means:
- To harass or punish in a manner designed to injure, grieve, or afflict.
- Specifically to cause to suffer because of belief.
- It also means to annoy with persistent or urgent approaches (such as attacks, pleas, or importunities).

Thus Jesus was saying to Saul/Paul when he was attacking Christians he was actually harassing, punishing, grieving, and afflicting Jesus Himself! (Acts 7:58-59 8:1-3)

Acts 26:14-16
14 ... Saul, Saul, why persecutest thou me? it is hard for thee to kick against the pricks (goads - something that urges or stimulates into action by pricking).
15 And I said, Who art thou, Lord? And he said, I am Jesus whom thou persecutest.

Then Jesus Calls/Appoints Saul/Paul as a “Minister”.

16 But rise, and stand upon thy feet: for I have appeared unto thee for this purpose, to make thee a minister (5257) and a witness both of these things which thou hast seen, and of those things in the which I will appear unto thee:

Since you as a “Pastor/Minister” have also received this Free Gift or Calling to the “Ministry”, use this Gift in your ‘Ministering’. (Ephesians 4:4)

Rom 12:7
7 Or ministry (1248), let us wait (use it or serve) on (in) our ministering (1248): or he that teacheth, on teaching;

Remembering that you have been made a “Pastor/Minister” by the Gift of the Grace of God given by the efficient operation of His Dunamis Power! (Ephesians 1:18-19)

Eph 3:7
7 Whereof I was made a minister (1249), according to the gift (‘dorea’ - a gratuity which is something given voluntarily or beyond obligation usually for some service) of the grace of God given unto me by the effectual working (efficient energy or operation) of his power (dunamis).

Thank God who has empowered you to be Called a “Minister” because He has considered you Faithful in putting you in the “Ministry”. (2 Timothy 1:9)

1 Tim 1:12
12 And I thank Christ Jesus our Lord, who hath enabled (empowered) me, for that he counted (deemed or considered) me faithful, putting me into the ministry (1248);

Take heed to the “Ministry” which you have received in the Lord and see that you fulfill it. (2 Peter 1:10 2 Thessalonians 1:11)

Col 4:17
17 And say to Archippus, Take heed to the ministry (1248) which thou hast received in the Lord, that thou fulfil (execute the office of, finish the task, accomplish or complete) it.

D. MINISTERS ARE AS A FLAMING FIRE:
Those of you “Pastors/Ministers” who are Called by God are as a ‘Flaming Fire’. In Hebrew and Greek a ‘Flaming Fire’ is one which is like a licking, blazing, hot and burning fire.

Ps 104:4
4 Who maketh his angels spirits; his ministers (8334) a flaming (a licking, blazing) fire (hot and burning):
Heb 1:7
7 And of the angels he saith, Who maketh his angels spirits, and his ministers (3011) a flame (blaze) of fire.

The next time you stop to think where you are in your walk with God as a “Pastor/Minister”, ask yourself if you are still a ‘Flame of Fire’ or has your Flame ‘petered out’? To ‘peter out’ means to diminish gradually and eventually come to an end!!

E. AS MINISTERS:
As “Pastors/Ministers” of the Lord, always remember to Bless (which is to kneel down, praise and thank) the Lord as you do His good pleasure (delight, desire, or favor). (Philippians 2:13  Colossians 1:10  1 Thessalonians 2:4  1 John 3:22)

Ps 103:21
21 Bless (kneel down, praise and thank) ye the LORD, all ye his hosts; ye ministers (8334) of his, that do his pleasure (delight, desire, or favor).

As “Pastors/Ministers” that have received the ‘Charisma Gifts’ of God the Holy Spirit, you are to ‘Minister’ those same ‘Charisma Gifts’ one to another, as good stewards of the diverse and various features of the Grace of God. (1 Corinthians 12:4-11  Romans 12:6-8)

1 Peter 4:10-11
10 As every man hath received the gift (charisma gifts - a divine gratuity, a spiritual endowment, a religious qualification or miraculous faculty), even so minister (1247) the same one to another, as good stewards (managers, overseers, and preachers of the gospel) of the manifold (diverse and various features of the) grace of God.

As “Pastors/Ministers” whenever you speak or Preach, do so as the oracles (which means a person giving wise or authoritative decisions, opinions or answers) of God. When you ‘Minister’ do so with the ability (might, power and strength) that God has given you so that God will be glorified in all things through Jesus Christ.

11 If any man speak (preaches or utter words), let him speak as the oracles (utterances) of God; if any man minister (1247), let him do it as of the ability (might, power and strength) which God giveth: that God in all things may be glorified through Jesus Christ, to whom be praise and dominion forever and ever. Amen.

F. THE MINISTRY OF RECONCILIATION:
One of the most important parts of the ‘Ministry’ of the “Pastor/Minister” is the ‘Ministry of Reconciliation’.

The Dictionary states ‘to Reconcile’ is:
- To restore to friendship or harmony.
- To make consistent or congruous (which is to be in agreement, harmony, or correspondence with) such as to reconcile an ideal with reality.
- To cause to submit to or accept something unpleasant such as reconciled to hardship.
To become reconciled.

To ‘Reconcile’ in Hebrew is:

**OT:3722 kaphar** (kaw-far'); a primitive root; to cover (specifically with bitumen); figuratively, to expiate (which means to put an end to, or to extinguish the guilt incurred by their offences) or condone, to placate or cancel:
- KJV - appease, make (an atonement, cleanse, disannul, forgive, be merciful, pacify, pardon, purge (away), put off, (make) reconcile (-liation).

**OT:7521 ratsah** (raw-tsaw'); a primitive root; to be pleased with; specifically, to satisfy a debt:
- KJV - (be) accept (-able), accomplish, set affection, approve, consent with, delight (self), enjoy, (be, have a) favour (-able), like, observe, pardon, (be, have, take) please (-ure), reconcile(-self).

To ‘Reconcile’ in Greek is:

**NT:2643 katallage** (kat-al-lag-ay'); from NT:2644; exchange (figuratively, adjustment), i.e. restoration to (the divine) favor:
- KJV - atonement, reconciliation (-ing).

**NT:2644 katallasso** (kat-al-las'-so); from NT:2596 and NT:236; to change mutually, i.e. (figuratively) to compound a difference:
- KJV - reconcile.

Since God has ‘Reconciled’ us to Himself by Jesus Christ, He has in turn given us the ‘Ministry of Reconciliation’.

**2 Cor 5:18-21**
18 And all things are of God, who hath reconciled (2644 - mutually changed) us to himself by Jesus Christ, and hath given to us the ministry (1248) of reconciliation (2643 - to atone, exchange, adjust or restore to divine favor);

And since God was in Christ ‘Reconciling’ the world to Himself, He did not count our trespasses unto us, but instead He has committed unto us the word (logos - doctrine or divine expression) of ‘Reconciliation’ as written in the Scriptures.

19 To wit (according or since), that God was in Christ, reconciling (2644 - mutually changing) the world unto himself, not imputing (counting) their trespasses (faults, offences or sins) unto them; and hath committed unto us the word (logos – doctrine or divine expression) of reconciliation (2643 - to atone, exchange, adjust or restore to Divine favor).

You then as “Pastors/Ministers” who are ‘Ambassadors and Representatives’ for Christ, need to be sure that you are ‘Reconciled’ to God through Jesus Christ; because He was made Sin for us, who knew no Sin, that we in turn might be made the ‘Righteousness of God’.

20 Now then we are ambassadors (representatives, Preachers and/or seniors) for Christ, as though God did beseech you (Call you) by us: we pray you in Christ’s stead (for the sake of Christ), be ye reconciled (2644 - mutually changed) to God.
21 For he hath made him to be sin for us, who knew no sin; that we might be made the righteousness (Christian justification) of God in him.

Matthew Henry wonderfully states in his Commentary on Reconciliation that:

*Note - “Reconciliation is here spoken of as our indispensable duty. As God is willing to be Reconciled to us, we ought to be Reconciled to God. And it is the great end and design of the Gospel, that word of Reconciliation, to prevail upon sinners to lay aside their enmity against God. Faithful Ministers are Christ's ambassadors, sent to treat with sinners on peace and Reconciliation: they come in God's name, with His entreaties, and act in Christ's stead, doing the very thing He did when He was upon this earth, and what He wills to be done now that He is in Heaven. Wonderful condescension! Though God can be no loser by the quarrel, nor gainer by the peace, yet by His Ministers He beseeches sinners to lay aside their enmity, and accept of the terms He offers, that they would be Reconciled to Him, to all His attributes, to all His laws, and to all His providences, to believe in the Mediator, to accept the atonement, and comply with His Gospel, in all the parts of it and in the whole design of it.”

G. MINISTERS OF THE OLD TESTAMENT:

“Ministers” in the Old Testament are those that ‘Ministered’ in the “Priest’s” Office. Here Joshua, whom Moses trained to be his successor, was called the “Minister” of Moses.

Ex 24:13
13 And Moses rose up, and his minister (8334) Joshua: and Moses went up into the mount of God.

Here God calls Aaron and his sons to ‘Minister’ unto Him in the “Priests” Office.

Ex 28:1
1 And take thou unto thee Aaron thy brother, and his sons with him, from among the children of Israel, that he may minister (3547) unto me in the priest's office, even Aaron, Nadab and Abihu, Eleazar and Ithamar, Aaron's sons.

Ex 28:41 Ex 30:30
41 And thou shalt put them (coats of fine linen) upon Aaron thy brother, and his sons with him; and shalt anoint them, and consecrate them, and sanctify them, that they may minister (3547) unto me in the priest's office.

Ex 40:15
15 And thou shalt anoint them, as thou didst anoint their father, that they may minister (3547) unto me in the priest's office: for their anointing shall surely be an everlasting priesthood throughout their generations.

Here the Lord states that His Covenant with His Servant David is an ‘Everlasting Covenant’ that cannot be broken, and the Levites the “Priests” are His “Ministers”.

Jer 33:20-22
20 Thus saith the LORD; If ye can break my covenant of the day, and my covenant of the night, and that there should not be day and night in their season:

21 Then may also my covenant be broken with David my servant, that he should not have a son to reign upon his throne; and with the Levites the priests, my ministers (8334).

22 As the host of heaven cannot be numbered, neither the sand of the sea measured: so will I
multiply the seed of David my servant, and the Levites that minister (8334) unto me.

H. MINISTERS OF THE NEW TESTAMENT:
It is God that enables and qualifies those that are or will become “Ministers” of the New Testament. This ‘Ministry’ is not of the letter of the Law because the letter of the Law kills and ends in death, but is of the Holy Spirit who gives life (or makes alive).

2 Cor 3:6-9
6 (God) Who also hath made us able (enabled us and qualified us) ministers (1249) of the new testament; not of the letter, but of the (Holy) spirit; for the letter killeth, but the (Holy) spirit giveth life (makes alive).

Here a comparison is given between the Law of Moses in the Old Testament and the Gospel of Jesus Christ in the New Testament. The first is called the ‘Ministry’ of death and condemnation that was written in stone; the second is called the ‘Ministry’ of the Holy Spirit and of Righteousness (or Christian justification).

7 But if the ministration (1248) of death, written and engraven in stones, was glorious, so that the children of Israel could not stedfastly behold the face of Moses for the glory of his countenance; which glory was to be done away:
8 How shall not the ministration (1248) of the (Holy) spirit be rather glorious?
9 For if the ministration (1248) of condemnation be glory, much more doth the ministration (1248) of righteousness (Christian justification) exceed in glory.

Here Paul states that he has been made the “Minister” of Jesus Christ unto the Gentiles, and that he is ‘Ministering’ the Gospel of God so that the presentation of the Gentiles might be acceptable (well received, approved or favorable) because they have been sanctified by the Holy Ghost (Spirit).

Rom 15:16
16 That I should be the minister (3011) of Jesus Christ to the Gentiles (non-Jewish, heathen nations or people), ministering (2418) the gospel of God, that the offering up (or presentation) of the Gentiles (non-Jewish, heathen Nations or people) might be acceptable (well received, approved or favorable), being sanctified (made Holy, purified and consecrated) by the Holy Ghost.

I. MINISTERS OF THE WORD:
As a “Pastor/Minister” of the Lord Jesus Christ, it is important that you become and continue to be, a “Minister” of the ‘Word of God’. (Psalms 68:11 John 1:1-2 Revelation 19:13)

Here Luke writes that the “Apostles” were “Ministers” of the ‘Word’, and that ‘Word’ is Jesus Christ!

1 Forasmuch as (Because) many have taken in hand (undertaken) to set forth in order (to arrange in order) a declaration of those things which are most surely believed among us.
2 Even as they (the Apostles) delivered them unto us, which from the beginning were eyewitnesses, and ministers (5257) of the word (3056 - logos - the Divine Expression (i.e. Christ); In the Book of Acts, the Twelve “Apostles” determined that they should not leave the ‘Word of God’ to do menial tasks, but instead give themselves continually to Prayer and to the ‘Ministry’ of the ‘Word’!
• Note that the Twelve “Apostles” here includes Matthias and not Paul! (Acts 1:26)

Acts 6:2
2 Then the twelve called the multitude of the disciples unto them, and said, It is not reason (fitting) that we should leave the word (3056 - logos) of God (2316 - theos - the supreme Divinity), and serve tables.

Acts 6:4
4 But we will give ourselves continually (to be earnest toward, to persevere, to be constantly diligent, to adhere closely to prayer, and to the ministry (1248) of the word (3056 - logos).

Since you have received this “Ministry” of a “Pastor/Minister” through God’s Mercy and Divine Grace, do not faint. In other words do not be afraid, nor become discouraged, do not become weary or tired, do not despair, or lose heart, nor tire of this Call!

2 Cor 4:1-2
1 Therefore seeing we have this ministry (1248), as we have received mercy (specially by Divine Grace), we faint not (we are not afraid, we have not become discouraged, we do not become weary or tired, we do not despair, lose heart nor tire of);

Since it is understood that as a “Pastor/Minister” you have renounced the hidden things of dishonesty, which includes not walking in craftiness nor the handling of the ‘Word of God’ deceitfully; commend yourself to every man’s conscience in the sight of God by the manifestation of the Truth.

2 But have renounced the hidden things (concealed, private, inward or secret things) of dishonesty, not walking in craftiness (trickery, cunning, subtlety or ‘sophistry’ - which is subtly deceptive reasoning or argumentation), nor handling the word of God deceitfully (‘adulterate’ - which means to corrupt, debase, or make impure by the addition of a foreign or inferior substance or element; especially to prepare for sale by replacing more valuable with less valuable or inert ingredients); but by manifestation (exhibition, expression) of the truth commending ourselves to every man’s conscience (moral consciousness) in the sight of God.

J. MINISTERS ARE CALLED TO BE SERVANTS:
As a “Pastor/Minister” you are Called to be a ‘Servant’. For those among you that might be striving to become ‘great’ in the Kingdom of God, the Bible states that whosoever will be ‘great’ among you, let them be your “Minister” (servant). Those of you that might be striving to become ‘chief’ in the Kingdom of God, the Bible states that whosoever will be ‘chief’ among you, let them be your ‘Servant’ (Bond-Servant).

Matt 20:25-27  Mark 10:42-44
25 But Jesus called them unto him, and said, Ye know that the princes (rulers) of the Gentiles (non-Jewish, heathen Nations or people) exercise dominion (control) over them, and they that are great exercise authority (have full privilege over them) upon them.
26 But it shall not be so among you: but whosoever will be great among you, let him be your minister (1249 - ‘diakonos’ - servant);
27 And whosoever will be chief among you, let him be your servant (1401 ‘doulos’ - bond servant):
According to the Dictionary a ‘Servant’ is:
• One that serves others, a public servant; especially one that performs duties about the person or home of a master or personal employer.

According to the Dictionary a ‘Bond-Servant’ is:
• One bound to service without wages.

A Bond-Servant in Hebrew is:

OT:5650 `ebed (eh'-bed); from OT:5647; a servant:
KJV - bondage, bondman, [bond-] servant, (man-) servant.
OT:519 'amah (aw-maw'); apparently a primitive word; a maid-servant or female slave:
KJV - (hand-) bondmaid (-woman), maid (-servant).

A Bond-Servant in the Greek is:

NT:1401 doulos (doo'-los); from NT:1210; a slave (literal or figurative, involuntary or voluntary; frequently, therefore in a qualified sense of subjection or subserviency):
KJV - bond (-man), servant.
NT:1402 douloo (doo-lo'-o); from NT:1401; to enslave (literally or figuratively):
KJV - bring into (be under) bondage, given, become (make) servant.

A voluntary ‘Bond-Servant’ is a servant that has voluntarily offered up his/her services as a slave forever. (Exodus 21:2-6  Deuteronomy 15:12-17)

Here Paul states that he voluntarily made himself a ‘Bond-Servant to all so that he might win the major portion of them to the Lord.

1 Cor 9:19
19 For though I be free from all men, yet have I made myself servant (1402) unto all, that I might gain (win) the more (the major portion).

Most Congregations enjoy it when their “Pastor/Minister” shares about himself and his family. As a “Pastor/Minister” it is OK to share about yourself, however, the Bible states that you need to be careful not to Preach about yourself, nor are you to try to bring attention to yourself. Instead, as a true ‘Bond-Servant’ you should Preach Christ Jesus the Lord for Jesus’ sake.

2 Cor 4:5-6
5 For we preach not ourselves, but Christ Jesus the Lord; and ourselves your servants (1401 ‘doulos’ - bond servant) for Jesus’ sake.

Remember, it is God who has shined in your ‘heart’ to give you the illumination of the knowledge of the Glory of God in the ‘face’ of Jesus Christ.

6 For God, who commanded the light to shine (beam or radiate) out of darkness, hath shined (beamed or radiated) in our hearts, to give the light (illumination) of the knowledge of the glory of
God in the face of Jesus Christ.

K. MINISTER TO ALL PEOPLES:
God has Called you as a “Pastor/Minister” to ‘Minister’ and to Preach the Gospel to ‘all’ peoples. In these last days, this includes all the people of different ethnic groups and colors in the vicinity and neighborhoods of your Church.

Here Peter had a ‘Vision’ that led him to believe that God was ‘no respecter of persons’ and that people could be Saved in every Nation. (Acts 10:9-33)

Acts 10:34-36
34 Then Peter opened his mouth, and said, Of a truth I perceive that God is no respecter of persons (is not one to exhibit partiality or favoritism):

Peter believed that people in every Nation that ‘Fear the Lord’ and works (or is committed to, does, and Ministers about) ‘Righteousness’ through Christian justification are accepted by God.

35 But in every nation he that feareth (to be in awe of, to revere, to be afraid of) him, and worketh (is engaged in or with, is committed to or does, or Ministers about) righteousness (specially Christian justification), is accepted with him.

Because Jesus is ‘LORD OF ALL’!

36 The word which God sent unto the children of Israel, preaching peace by Jesus Christ: (he is Lord of all:)

Some “Pastors/Ministers” receive specific directions along with their Call of God. Paul was directed to ‘Minister’ to the Gentiles (non-Jewish, heathen Nations or people) just as Peter was Called to ‘Minister’ to the Jews.

Gal 2:7-8
7 But contrariwise (on the contrary), when they saw that the gospel of the uncircumcision (Gentiles) was committed unto me, as the gospel of the circumcision (the Jewish people) was unto Peter;
8(For he that wrought effectually (was mighty in) in Peter to the apostleship of the circumcision (the Jewish people), the same was mighty in me toward the Gentiles:)

The results of Paul ‘Ministering’ the Gospel to the Gentiles is that those that received Jesus became fellow-heirs of the same Body of Christ and were made partakers of the promises of Christ.

Eph 3:6
6 That the Gentiles (non-Jewish, heathen Nations or people) should be fellowheirs (co-heirs, joint-heirs or heirs together), and of the same body (a fellow-member of the Christian community), and partakers of his promise in Christ by the gospel:

As prophesied in the Old Testament, the following Scriptures represent the people of different ethnic groups and colors and are described as names of different types of ‘Trees’. Also, the ‘Wildernesses and
the ‘Deserts’ represent the dry or dead Churches of today. (Revelation 3:1 3:15)

In the Dictionary a ‘Wilderness’ is:
- A tract or region uncultivated and uninhabited by human beings.
- An area essentially undisturbed by human activity together with its naturally developed life community.
- An empty or pathless area or region.
- A part of a garden devoted to wild growth.
- A wild or uncultivated state.
- A confusing multitude or mass.
- A bewildering situation.

In the Dictionary a ‘Desert’ is:
- Described as an arid land with usually sparse vegetation.
- An area of water apparently devoid of life.
- A wild uninhabited and uncultivated tract.
- A desolate or forbidding area.

In these last days God is Calling you as a “Pastor/Minister” to be open to allowing all types of people to be welcome into your Church! (In fact go out and get them!) (Luke 14:23)
If you are open, then God will plant this variety of people (Trees) in your Church and this will bring ‘new life’ to your Church!

**Isa 41:19-20**

19 *I will plant in the wilderness the cedar, the shittah tree, and the myrtle, and the oil tree; I will set in the desert the fir tree, and the pine, and the box tree together:*

Bringing in all types of people will cause the people that have been dying in the ‘Wilderness and ‘Desert’ Church to see, know, consider and understand together that the Hand of the Lord has done this.

20 *That they may see, and know, and consider, and understand together, that the hand of the LORD hath done this, and the Holy One of Israel hath created it.*

Then your ‘Flock’ will go out with joy and be led with peace. They will break out with singing and the people (Trees) shall clap their hands. Instead of the thorny and stinging people (Trees) of your past ‘Flock’, God will plant new and fruitful people (Trees), and this will be an everlasting sign that your Church will not be cut off.

**Isa 55:12-13**

12 *For ye shall go out with joy, and be led forth with peace: the mountains and the hills shall break forth before you into singing, and all the trees of the field shall clap their hands.*

13 *Instead of the thorn shall come up the fir tree, and instead of the brier shall come up the myrtle tree: and it shall be to the LORD for a name, for an everlasting sign that shall not be cut off* (cut down, destroyed, consumed or perish).

When all these people (Trees) of different ethnic groups and colors come into your Church together, it
will beautify the place of God’s Sanctuary and will make the place of His feet Glorious!

Isa 60:13
13 The glory of Lebanon shall come unto thee, the fir tree, the pine tree, and the box together, to beautify the place of my sanctuary; and I will make the place of my feet glorious (abounding with Glory).

L. A FAITHFUL MINISTER:
As a “Pastor/Minister” of Christ and a Steward (Overseer or Preacher) of the mysteries of God, you are required by God to be found ‘Faithful’.

1 Cor 4:1-2
1 Let a man so account (consider or conclude) of us, as of the ministers (5257) of Christ, and stewards (Overseers or Preachers) of the mysteries (secrets) of God.
2 Moreover it is required in stewards (Overseers or Preachers), that a man be found faithful (4103).

To be Faithful in Greek is:

NT:4103 pistos (pis-tos'); from NT:3982; objectively, trustworthy; subjectively, trustful:
KJV - believe (-ing, -r), faithful (-ly), sure, true.

As a “Faithful Minister” in the Lord Jesus Christ always remember that you are surrounded by other ‘Faithful’ Brethren.
The following are some Brothers in Christ that are called ‘Faithful Ministers’ and/or Brothers.

Eph 6:21 Colossians 4:7
21 But that ye also may know my affairs (myself), and how I do, Tychicus, a beloved brother and faithful (4103) minister (1249) in the Lord, shall make known to you all things:
Col 1:7
7 As ye also learned of Epaphras our dear fellowservant, who is for you a faithful (4103) minister (1249) of Christ;
Col 4:9
9 With Onesimus, a faithful (4103) and beloved brother, who is one of you. They shall make known unto you all things which are done here.
1 Peter 5:12
12 By Silvanus, a faithful (4103) brother unto you, as I suppose, I have written briefly, exhorting, and testifying that this is the true grace of God wherein ye stand.

Here Timothy was told that if you put the Brethren in remembrance of certain things, you shall be a “Good Minister” of Jesus Christ nourished up in the words of ‘Faith’. Therefore, do not be afraid to remind one another of certain things that perhaps may have been forgotten!

1 Tim 4:6
6 If thou put the brethren in remembrance of these things, thou shalt be a good minister (1249) of Jesus Christ, nourished up in the words of faith (4102) and of good doctrine, whereunto thou hast attained.
M. CO-LABORERS:
As “Ministers” of God, it is important that all of you recognize that you are ‘Fellow-Laborers’ (Co-Laborers) together in the Gospel of Jesus Christ.

‘Fellow-Laborers’ in the Greek means:

NT:4904 sunergos (soon-er-gos’); from a presumed compound of NT:4862 and the base of NT:2041; a co-laborer, i.e. coadjutor (which means one who works together with another; or to unite, band, combine, concur, conjoin, cooperate, or be in league together)
KJV - companion in labour, (fellow-) helper (-labourer, -worker), labourer together with, workfellow.

Here Timothy was sent as a “Minister” of God and a ‘Co-laborer’ to comfort the Brethren at Thessalonica concerning their ‘Faith’.

1 Thess 3:2
2 And sent Timotheus, our brother, and minister (9999) of God, and our fellowlabourer (4904 - Co-Laborer) in the gospel of Christ, to establish you, and to comfort you concerning your faith:

Here Paul explains to those in Corinth what being ‘Co-Laborers’ together actually consists of or means.

1 Cor 3:5-9
5 Who then is Paul, and who is Apollos, but ministers (1249) by whom ye believed, even as the Lord gave to every man?
6 I have planted (instilled doctrine), Apollos watered (furnished drink or irrigated); but God gave the increase (to grow up or to enlarge).
7 So then neither is he that planteth (instilled doctrine) anything, neither he that watereth (furnished drink or irrigated); but God that giveth the increase (to grow up or to enlarge).
8 Now he that planteth (instilled doctrine) and he that watereth (furnished drink or irrigated) are one: and every man shall receive his own reward according to his own labour.

As a “Pastor/Minister” you are not only a ‘Co-Laborer’ with other “Ministers” but you are also a ‘Co-Laborer’ with God.

9 For we are labourers together (4904 - Co-Laborers) with God: ye are God's husbandry (land worker, farmer or one who cultivates), ye are God's building (house builder or one who constructs).

You then as ‘Co-laborers’ together with God, should be ever so careful as not to receive the Grace of God in vain.

2 Cor 6:1
1 We then, as workers together (4903 - Co-Laborers or fellow-workers) with him, beseech (exhort) you also that ye receive not the grace (graciousness and favor) of God in vain (‘emptily’ - which means containing nothing, lacking reality, substance, meaning, or value, or having no purpose or result).

Give no offense (stumbling or occasion of sin) in anything so that the ‘Ministry’ will not be blamed.
2 Cor 6:3-4
3 Giving no offence (stumbling or occasion of sin) in anything, that the ministry (1248) be not blamed:

But in all things approve and/or exhibit yourselves as the “Ministers” of God!

4 But in all things approving (commending or exhibiting) ourselves as the ministers (1249) of God,…

V. ANGEL:
The following section includes many of the Scriptures in the King James Version of the Bible that have the word “Angel” in them, particularly in the Book of Revelation. The word “Angel” can be interpreted as “Pastor”; therefore, these Scriptures are of extreme importance to you as a “Pastor” and have been included to reveal what Jesus is personally stating to you as His “Pastor/Angel”. This includes what your role as a “Pastor/Angel” is, what some of your responsibilities are, as well as what some of the sacrifices are that go along with this Call or Office.

A. THE DEFINITION OF THE TERM ANGEL:
The following is what the Dictionary states are some of the meanings for the word “Angel” in English. Of course these meanings may not all be Biblically accurate and are added only for your information.

Definition in the Dictionary:

ANGEL
1. A Messenger.
2. In some religions, a Divine Being who acts as a Messenger of God
3. A Spiritual Being superior to humans in power and intelligence; especially: one in the lowest rank in the Celestial Hierarchy.
4. An attendant Spirit or Guardian.
5. A person like an Angel (as in looks or behavior).
6. Somebody who is kind or beautiful.

The word “Angel” is used throughout the Bible and usually represents a Heavenly Being. However, the word “Angel” can also represent a “Pastor/Priest” or Messenger of the Church.

Definition in Hebrew:

OT:4397 mal'ak (mal-awk'); from an unused root meaning to despatch as a deputy; a messenger; specifically, of God, i.e. an angel (also a prophet, priest or teacher):
KJV - ambassador, angel, king, messenger.

Definition in Aramaic:
OT:4398 mal'ak (Aramaic) (mal-ak'); corresponding to OT:4397; an angel:
KJV - angel.
Definition in Greek:

**NT:32 aggelos** (ang'-el-os): from aggello [probably derived from NT:71; compare NT:34] (to bring tidings); a messenger; especially an "angel"; by implication, a pastor:
KJV - angel, messenger.

**B. THE OLD TESTAMENT:**
In the Old Testament the word mal'ak (4397) sometimes means an “Angel”, however here in this Scripture in Malachi it represents the “Priests” of God who are the Messengers of the Lord of Hosts.

**Mal 2:7**
7 For the priest's (3548) lips (speech) should keep (regard) knowledge, and they should seek the law at his mouth: for he is the messenger (4397 mal'ak) of the LORD of hosts.

**C. THE NEW TESTAMENT:**
In the Book of Revelation the word for “Angel” is (aggelos) which represents the “Pastors” or ‘Messengers of the Churches’ that are sent by Jesus Christ.
Here it states that Jesus (the Son of Man) is in the middle of the ‘Seven Candlesticks’ (the Seven Churches) dressed in a garment down to His feet and girded around His breast with a Girdle (or belt) made of Gold.

**Rev 1:13**
13 And in the midst (middle) of the seven candlesticks one like unto the Son of man, clothed with a garment down to the foot, and girt (girded around) about the paps (breast) with a golden girdle (a belt made of gold).

There are ‘Seven Stars’ in the right hand of Jesus’ and out of His mouth proceeds a ‘Sharp Two-edged Sword’, and His appearance is as the bright sunshine.

**Rev 1:16**
16 And he had in his right hand seven stars: and out of his mouth went (goes or proceeds out) a sharp twoedged sword: and his countenance (appearance) was as the sun shineth in his strength.

The mystery of the ‘Seven Stars’ is they are the “Pastors/Angels” of the ‘Seven Churches’. This means that as a “Pastor/Angel” you hold a special place with Jesus, and that special place is in the right hand of Jesus Christ (the Son of Man). This puts you very close to the ‘Two-edged sword’ in Jesus mouth, and when the Lord judges your Church, you will be the first one to be judged! (1 Peter 4:17)
(Read the Tracts “The Seven Stars” and “The Two-edged Sword” written by Timothy II)

**Rev 1:20**
20 The mystery of the seven stars which thou sawest in my right hand, and the seven golden candlesticks, The seven stars are the angels (32 ‘Aggelos’ - Pastors/Angels) of the seven churches: and the seven candlesticks which thou sawest are the seven churches.

**D. THE SEVEN GOLDEN CANDLESTICKS:**
When starting to write the section of this “Book”, I assumed it would be just a repeat of the Book “The Seven Golden Candlesticks”, which I had already written. However, the Lord had me originally direct that “Book” on the ‘Seven Churches’ to those in Christian Leadership and to the ‘Body of Christ’ in general. Here the Lord told me to direct this section of the same Scriptures to you the “Pastor/Angel!

I believe the Lord has revealed to me that ‘The Seven Golden Candlesticks’ are the ‘Seven Churches’ of God that represent the Seven basic types of Christian Churches that are functioning throughout the world today. I believe the role and personal responsibilities of the “Pastor/Angel”, both good and bad, are well represented in these ‘Seven Churches’ and are established here for your perusal.

The following Scriptures are directed to you the “Pastor/Angel” starting with the ‘Church of Ephesus’.

1. **EPHESUS:**

In writing to the “Pastor/Angel” of the ‘Church of Ephesus’, Jesus states that although he may have started out doing things right; he had ‘Fallen Back’. Jesus explains that although the “Pastor/Angel” was currently doing the work of the Church, he was doing it for ‘works sake’ and not for Him. This is because the “Pastor/Angel” had left his first love who is Jesus Christ.

Here in the writing to the “Pastor/Angel” of the ‘Church of Ephesus’, Jesus is described as He that holds the ‘Seven Stars’ in his right hand, and who walks in the middle of the “Seven Golden Candlesticks”.

**Rev 2:1**

1 Unto the angel (32 ‘Aggelos’ - Pastor/Angel) of the church of Ephesus write; These things saith he (Jesus) that holdeth the seven stars (Pastors) in his right hand, who walketh in the midst of the seven golden candlesticks (Seven Churches);

Jesus then describes the things that the “Pastor/Angel” has been doing that are positive and then warns of the need for improvement!

Jesus states to the “Pastor/Angel” of the ‘Church of Ephesus’ and to you “Pastors” that He knows all about you:

- **He knows** all your works (toil, as an effort or occupation, deeds, doings). Therefore you need to watch what you do and how you do it. (2 Corinthians 4:2)
- **He knows** your labor (in pain, trouble, and weariness). Therefore as a “Pastor/Angel” you must be willing to labor (in pain, trouble, and weariness) in your Call. (1 Corinthians 3:8-9 15:58)
- **He knows** your Patience (cheerful or hopeful endurance and constancy). Therefore as a “Pastor/Angel” you must display patience (cheerful or hopeful endurance and constancy). (2 Corinthians 6:4 Galatians 5:22)
- **He knows** that you cannot bear (not endure or tolerate) those that are evil. Therefore as a “Pastor/Angel” you must not bear (not endure or tolerate) those that are evil. (Psalms 97:10 Proverbs 8:13)
- **He knows** that you have tried (examined or tested) those that say they are Apostles. Therefore as a “Pastor/Angel” you need to take the responsibility to try (to examine or test) those that say they hold an Office in the Five-Fold Ministry such as an Apostle. (1 John 4:1-3)
- **He knows** that you have borne (endured and sustained) and have Patience for the sake of His Name and have labored and not fainted (lost courage or Spirit). Therefore stay strong in the
• He knows that you hate the deeds of the Nicolaitans. Therefore as a “Pastor/Angel” you too should hate the deeds (toil, as an effort or occupation, works, doings) of those that teach any false doctrine such as the Nicolaitans. (2 John 9-10  2 Timothy 4:3-4)

Rev 2:2-3
2 I know thy works (2041), and thy labour, and thy patience, and how thou canst not bear (endure or tolerate) them which are evil: and thou hast tried (examined or tested) them which say they are apostles, and are not, and hast found them liars:
3 And hast borne (endured and sustained), and hast patience, and for my name's sake hast laboured, and hast not fainted.

Rev 2:6
6 But this thou hast, that thou hastest the deeds (2041) of the Nicolaitans, which I also hate.

* An interesting side note to these Scriptures is that today some ‘Christian Leaders’ believe that because the “Pastor/Angel” tried (examined or tested) those that ‘said’ they were Apostles and were not, means that there are no Apostles today! Instead, the Lord has shown Timothy II that just the opposite is true. It does not state that the “Pastor/Angel” found that ALL Apostles were false and that there were no Apostles. In fact, in order for the “Pastor/Angel” to know that they were False Apostles, he had to be able to compare them with those that were the True “Apostles”! Remember, Satan always imitates the true things of God. If there are False Apostles today, then there also have to be true Apostles today! The proof that there are “Apostles” today is explained in the “Five-Fold Ministry” which is in (Ephesians 4:8, & 4:11-14). Here Paul states that the “Five-Fold Ministry” is for the Church and is for the perfecting of the Saints. Since we are the Saints of today we are still under the ‘Spiritual Leadership’ of the ‘Offices’ of the “Five-Fold Ministry” and we still need perfecting!

Another proof that there are “Apostles” today is that there are other “Apostles” mentioned in the Bible after the “Twelve Apostles of the Lamb”. The “Twelve Apostles of the Lamb” includes Mathias who replaced Judas. After the Twelve came the “Apostles” of the Church starting with Paul and includes many others. (Acts 1:15-26  6:2  14:14  1 Corinthians 12:28-29  16:10  2 Corinthians 8:23-24 Romans 16:7)

* A side note to verse #6 is that it mentions the Nicolaitans. The Nicolaitans are believed to have been a loose sect who sheltered themselves under the name of Christianity. They were believed to hold hateful doctrines and deeds and were caught up in immoral acts and idolatry. It is also believed that the Nicolaitans taught the ‘freedom of the flesh’; that the spirit was separate from the flesh so it didn’t matter what they did in the flesh.

God states in this verse that even though you might hate these deeds, and are not allowing immoral acts in your Church, you are still doing it with the wrong motives.

Jesus states to the “Pastor/Angel” of the ‘Church of Ephesus’ and to you “Pastors” that:
• No matter how much you labor or what you do, if you forget who you are doing it for (Jesus), your work is in VAIN! Therefore NEVER LEAVE YOUR FIRST LOVE, who is JESUS CHRIST! (Mark 12:30  1 John 4:8  4:10  5:3  3:24)
• As a “Pastor/Angel” you need to remember (be mindful) from which or what you have fallen and Repent (which means to think differently and afterwards to reconsider morally, and to feel compunction arising from awareness of guilt)! (Romans 6:12-13)
Although Jesus may have found your first works to be satisfactory, they too may have fallen and Jesus says you need to go back and do the first works! (Colossians 1:23 2 Timothy 3:14-17)

As a “Pastor/Angel” if you have fallen from your first works, or in any area, you need to Repent (which means to think differently and afterwards to reconsider morally, and to feel compunction arising from awareness of guilt), or else Jesus will remove your Church! (Acts 3:19 26:20)

Rev 2:4-5
4 Nevertheless I have somewhat against thee, because thou hast left thy first love.
5 Remember (be mindful) therefore from whence (which or what) thou art fallen, and repent (which means to think differently and afterwards to reconsider morally, and to feel compunction arising from awareness of guilt), and do the first works; or else I will come unto thee quickly, and will remove thy candlestick (Church) out of his place, except thou repent.

“Pastor/Angel”! Let your ears hear what God the Holy Spirit is trying to tell you. If you do not understand what God the Holy Spirit is telling you, perhaps you need to Repent and ask Jesus to forgive your Sins and to re-invite Jesus into your heart as your Lord and Savior. (Psalms 51:10-13)

Rev 2:7
7 He (the “Pastor/Angel”) that hath an ear, let him hear what the Spirit (God the Holy Spirit) saith unto the churches; To him (the “Pastor/Angel”) that overcometh (subdues, conquers, prevails and gets the victory) will I give to eat of the tree of life, which is in the midst of the paradise of God.

2. SMYRNA:
In the writing to the “Pastor/Angel” of the Church in Smyrna, Jesus tells the “Pastor/Angel” that he is doing many things right, but because of where he is located he will have to go through many trials and tribulations.

Here Jesus is described as the ‘First and the Last’ and He which was ‘Dead and now is Alive’. He is the ‘First’ (the Alpha) for all things were made by Him, and He was before all things. He is the ‘Last’ (the Omega) because all things are made for Him, and He will be the Judge of all. (Revelation 1:11 1:17 22:13) He is also from ‘everlasting to everlasting’ (Psalms 90:2 41:13), and is ‘the same yesterday, today, and forever’. (Hebrews 13:8)

Rev 2:8
8 And unto the angel (32 ‘Aggelos’ - Pastor/Angel) of the church in Smyrna write; These things saith (Jesus) the first and the last, which was dead, and is alive;

Jesus states to the “Pastor/Angel” of the Church in Smyrna and to you “Pastors” that:

- He knows all your works (toil, as an effort or occupation, deeds, and/or doings), therefore watch what you do and how you do it. (Titus 3:8 3:14 1:16 Ephesians 2:10)
- As a “Pastor/Angel” you need to be willing to suffer tribulation (which can be pressure, affliction, anguish, burdens, persecution and/or trouble): (Acts 14:22 Romans 5:3 8:35 12:12)
- As a “Pastor/Angel” if you have known or are going through poverty (which is being poor, or beggary which is the practice of begging, or ‘indigence’ - which is a level of poverty in which real hardship and deprivation are suffered and comforts of life are wholly lacking), remember
this, in God’s eyes, you are rich! (Psalm 113:7-8  2 Corinthians 8:9)

- As a “Pastor/Angel” you can expect to be blasphemed (which is vilification especially against God, evil speaking or railing) by those of the synagogue (assembly, congregation or church) of Satan. (Psalms 74:18)
- As a “Pastor/Angel” the Devil may cast some of you into prison. (Psalm 69:33  146:7) However, God may allow this so that you may be tried (tested, scrutinized, enticed, disciplined, examined and/or proven). (1 Peter 1:7) Therefore, Fear none of the things that you shall suffer!
- As a “Pastor/Angel” you may go through tribulation (which can be pressure, affliction, anguish, burdens, persecution and/or trouble) for a period of time, but you must be faithful (trustworthy, believing, sure and true) unto death. (Revelation 17:14) If you are Faithful, Jesus will give you a Crown of Life! (James 1:12)

Verse 9-10
9 I know thy works (toil, as an effort or occupation, deeds, and/or doings), and tribulation (pressure, affliction, anguish, burdens, persecution and/or trouble), and poverty (which is being poor, or beggary which is the practice of begging, or ‘indigence’ - which is a level of poverty in which real hardship and deprivation are suffered and comforts of life are wholly lacking), (but thou art rich) and I know the blasphemy (which is vilification especially against God, evil speaking or railing) of them which say they are Jews, and are not, but are the synagogue (assembly, congregation or church) of Satan.
10 Fear none of those things which thou shalt suffer: behold, the devil shall cast some of you into prison, that ye may be tried (tested, scrutinized, enticed, disciplined, examined and/or proven); and ye shall have tribulation (pressure, affliction, anguish, burdens, persecution and/or trouble) ten days: be thou faithful (trustworthy, believing, sure and true) unto death, and I will give thee a crown of life.

Dear “Pastor/Angel”, give ear to what God the Holy Spirit is saying unto you and to your Church. If you overcome (conquer, prevail and get the victory over) all these circumstances, Jesus promises that you will not be hurt by the Second Death! (Revelation 20:6  20:14-15  21:8)

Verse 11
11 He (the “Pastor/Angel”) that hath an ear, let him hear what the Spirit (God the Holy Spirit) saith unto the churches; He (the “Pastor/Angel”) that overcometh (subdues, conquers, prevails and gets the victory) shall not be hurt of the second death.

3. PERGAMOS:
In the writing to the “Pastor/Angel” of the ‘Church in Pergamos’ Jesus tells him that although he dwells where Satan’s seat is, he must continue to do the right things.

Here Jesus is described as having the sharp sword with two edges. The ‘Two Edged Sword’ of Jesus is described as being in His Mouth and is what Jesus (who is the Word of God) uses to discern the thoughts and intents of the heart. (Revelation 1:16  Hebrews 4:12) Remember, it is not what you do to Serve the Lord, but rather the underlying motives of why you are doing it that counts!

Verse 12
12 And to the angel (Pastor) of the church in Pergamos write; These things saith he which hath the sharp (keen, rapid or swift) sword (any weapon of the kind literally or figuratively) with two edges
two-edged or double-edged);

Jesus states to the “Pastor/Angel” of the ‘Church in Pergamos’ and to you “Pastors” that:

- He knows all your works (toil, as an effort or occupation, deeds and/or doings); therefore watch what you do and how you do it.
- He knows that although you live in an area where Satan’s seat (throne) is, you still hold fast (keep, retain) His Name and have not denied (contradicted, disavowed, rejected or refused) His Faith.
- Even when one who was Faithful to Jesus was slain (or martyred) among you where Satan dwells (inhabits), you still stayed strong.

Rev 2:13-17
13 I know thy works (toil, as an effort or occupation, deeds and/or doings), and where thou dwellest, even where Satan's seat (throne) is; and thou holdest fast (keep, retain) my name, and hast not denied (contradicted, disavowed, rejected or refused) my faith, even in those days wherein Antipas was my faithful martyr, who was slain among you, where Satan dwelleth (dwells or inhabits).

Jesus then states to the “Pastor/Angel” of the ‘Church in Pergamos’ and to you “Pastors” that:

- He has a few things against you.
- You have allowed those to remain in your Church that hold the False Doctrine of Balaam (a False Teacher). This False Doctrine includes eating things sacrificed to idols (as part of an idolatrous offering) and can lead to impure worship and impure practices. This False Doctrine also includes the committing of fornication (to act the harlot, to indulge in unlawful lusts of either sex, and/or to practice idolatry), which will also cause a stumbling-block to your ‘Flock’.
- You also have those there that hold the False Doctrine (instruction or what has been taught) of the Nicolaitans which Jesus hates!
- As a “Pastor/Angel” if you have fallen or backslidden in any of these areas, you need to Repent (to think differently and afterwards reconsider morally, to feel compunction which is anxiety arising from awareness of guilt), or else Jesus will come quickly (without delay, soon, by surprise or suddenly) and will fight against you and those in your Church with the sword of His mouth.

14 But I have a few things against thee, because thou hast there them that hold the doctrine of Balaam (a false teacher), who taught Balac to cast a stumblingblock before the children of Israel, to eat things sacrificed unto idols (part of an idolatrous offering), and to commit fornication (to act the harlot, to indulge in unlawful lusts of either sex, and/or to practice idolatry).
15 So hast thou also them that hold the doctrine (instruction or what has been taught) of the Nicolaitans, which thing I hate.
16 Repent (to think differently and afterwards reconsider morally, to feel compunction which is anxiety arising from awareness of guilt); or else I will come unto thee quickly (without delay, soon, by surprise or suddenly), and will fight against them (yourselves) with the sword of my mouth.

Dear “Pastor/Angel”, give ear to what God the Holy Spirit is saying unto you and to your Church. If you do, Jesus gives you some wonderful promises! Because you are a “Pastor/Angel” of the Lord Jesus, if you will overcome (subdue, conquer, prevail and get the victory), Jesus will let you taste of the ‘Hidden (secret) Manna of Heaven’ which is Jesus
Himself, the ‘True Bread of Heaven’! (John 6:31-35 John 6:49-58)
Jesus will also give to you a ‘White Stone’ which is a verdict of acquittal and a ticket of admission. This ‘White Stone’ will have your ‘New Name’ written on it which only you will know.

17 **He** (the “Pastor/Angel”) **that hath an ear, let him hear what the Spirit** (God the Holy Spirit) **saith unto the churches:** **To him** (the “Pastor/Angel”) **that overcometh** (subdues, conquers, prevails and gets the victory) **will I give to eat of the hidden manna, and will give him** (the “Pastor/Angel”) a **white stone** (a verdict of acquittal and a ticket of admission), and **in the stone a new name written,** which no man knoweth saving (except) he that receiveth it.

4. THYATIRA:
Here in the writing to the “Pastor/Angel” of the ‘Church in Thyatira’, Jesus is described as ‘the Son of God’ (Daniel 3:25 Mark 1:1 15:39 John 20:31 1 John 5:13) with Eyes as a ‘Flame of Fire’ and Feet like ‘Fine Brass’. (Revelation 1:14-15 19:12)

**Rev 2:18**
18 **And unto the angel** (Pastor) **of the church in Thyatira** write; These things saith the Son of God, who hath his eyes like unto a flame of fire, and his feet are like fine brass:

Jesus states to the “Pastor/Angel” of the ‘Church in Thyatira’ and to you “Pastors” that:
- He knows your works (toil, as an effort or occupation, deeds and/or doings), and Love (agape - Love), and Service (Ministry or Office), and Faith (pistis - persuasion, credence; moral conviction of religious truth, or the truthfulness of God, especially reliance upon Christ for Salvation) and your Patience (cheerful or hopeful endurance and constancy).
- And the last works to be more (more in quantity and more in quality) then the first. This means that although your first works started out small and slowly, maybe even poorly, they have steadily increased for the better.

**Rev 2:19-29**
19 **I know thy works** (toil, as an effort or occupation, deeds and/or doings), **and charity** (‘agape’ - Love), and **service** (Ministry or Office), **and faith** (‘pistis’ - persuasion, credence; moral conviction of religious truth, or the truthfulness of God, especially reliance upon Christ for Salvation), **and thy patience** (cheerful or hopeful endurance and constancy), **and thy works** (toil, as an effort or occupation, deeds and/or doings); **and the last to be more** (more in quantity and more in quality) **than the first.**

Jesus states to the “Pastor/Angel” of the ‘Church in Thyatira’ and to you “Pastors” that:
- He has a few things against you because:
- You have allowed a false teacher to be in your Leadership that boasts of herself to be a Prophetess.
- You have allowed her to teach and to seduce your ‘Flock’ into committing fornication (porneuo - to act the harlot, to indulge in unlawful lust of either sex, and/or practice idolatry).
- You have also allowed her to deceive your ‘Flock’ into eating things sacrificed to idols (or part of an idolatrous offering).
- Worse of all, even though Jesus gave her time to Repent, she did not Repent (to think differently and afterwards reconsider morally, to feel compunction which is anxiety arising from awareness of guilt) and you still allowed her to teach and to be in Leadership.
20 Notwithstanding (nevertheless) I have a few things against thee, because thou sufferest (let) that woman Jezebel (a false teacher), which calleth (boasts or describes) herself a prophetess, to teach and to seduce (deceive) my servants to commit fornication (‘porneuo’ - to act the harlot, to indulge in unlawful lust of either sex, and/or practice idolatry), and to eat things sacrificed unto idols (or part of an idolatrous offering).

21 And I gave her space (time) to repent (to think differently and afterwards reconsider morally, to feel compunction which is anxiety arising from awareness of guilt) of her fornication (‘porneia’ - harlotry including adultery and incest, and/or idolatry); and she repented (to think differently and afterwards reconsider morally, to feel compunction which is anxiety arising from awareness of guilt) not.

Unless she Repents (to think differently and afterwards reconsiders morally, to feel compunction which is anxiety arising from awareness of guilt), Jesus will cast this False Prophetess and those in your Church that commit adultery with her into the ‘Great Tribulation’ (Matthew 24:21 Revelation 7:14). If she does not Repent, then Jesus will also destroy the children that she has produced and give unto you and your ‘Flock’ according to your works.

22 Behold, I will cast her into a bed (for sickness), and them that commit adultery with her into great (exceeding great or the greatest) tribulation, except (unless) they repent (to think differently or afterwards reconsider morally, to feel compunction which is anxiety arising from awareness of guilt) of their deeds (works).

23 And I will kill (destroy) her children (that she has produced) with death; and all the churches (Christian community) shall know that I am he which searcheth the reins (the innermost mind) and hearts: and I will give unto every one of you according to your works (deeds).

To those in your Church that have not this False Doctrine, Jesus will put no other burden upon them or you. It has been enough just putting up with this False Prophetess and the False Brethren that she has produced.

24 But unto you I say, and unto the rest in Thyatira, as many as have not this doctrine, and which have not known the depths of Satan, as they speak; I will put upon you none other burden.

Here Jesus encourages you the “Pastor/Angel” to hold fast (keep or retain) what you have that is good until He comes! If you overcome and keep an eye on the Lord’s work unto the end, then in the Millennium He will give you ‘authority’ over the Nations. At that time you shall rule over them as God’s Shepherd with a rod (a baton of Royalty) of iron.

25 But that which ye have already hold fast (keep or retain) till I come.

26 And he that overcometh (conquers, prevails and gets the victory), and keepeth (keeps an eye upon to guard against loss) my works unto the end, to him will I give power (‘exouvia’ - authority) over the nations:

27 And he shall rule (to tend as a shepherd) them with a rod (a baton of royalty made) of iron; as the vessels of a potter (made of clay) shall they be broken to shivers (in pieces): even as I received of my Father.

In order to have the ability and authority to rule over the Nations with the Power of God and with the
Spirit of Wisdom, Knowledge and Understanding you will receive the ‘Morning Star’, which is Jesus Christ Himself. (Revelation 22:16)

28 **And I will give him the morning star.**

Dear “Pastor/Angel”, give ear to what God the Holy Spirit is saying unto you and to your Church!

29 **He (the “Pastor/Angel”) that hath an ear, let him hear what the Spirit (God the Holy Spirit) saith unto the churches.**

5. **SARDIS:**
In the writing to the “Pastor/Angel” of the ‘Church in Sardis’, Jesus is described as having “The Seven Spirits of God” and “The Seven Stars”. (Read the Book and the Tract “The Seven Spirits of God” also the Tract “The Seven Stars” written by Timothy II)

“The Seven Spirits of God” are:
- ‘The Eyes of the Lord’ sent forth into all of the earth. (Revelation 5:6  Zechariah 4:10  2 Chronicles 16:9  Proverbs 15:3  Psalms 34:15  1 Peter 3:12)
- ‘The Seven Lamps of Fire’ before the Throne of God. (Revelation 1:4  Revelation 4:5)

“The Seven Stars” are:
- In the right hand of Jesus. (Revelation 1:16)
- A mystery; and that mystery is that they are ‘The Angels’ of the Seven Churches. (Revelation 1:20)

Rev 3:1
1 **And unto the angel (Pastor) of the church in Sardis write; These things saith he that hath the seven Spirits of God, and the seven stars:**

Jesus states to the “Pastor/Angel” of the ‘Church in Sardis’ and to you “Pastors” that:
- He knows your works (toil, as an effort or occupation, deeds and/or doings), and that you use the Name of ‘Jesus’ or ‘Christian’ in your Church, but you and your Church are Dead!
- In other words, there is a banner wrapped around your Church with the word ‘Ichabod’ written on it; which means there is no Glory, or the Glory is departed! (1 Samuel 4:21)

Rev 3:1
… **I know thy works** (toil, as an effort or occupation, deeds and/or doings), **that thou hast a name that thou livest, and art dead** (which means a corpse, deceased, deprived of life, no longer alive, having the appearance of death, lacking power to move, feel, or respond; very tired, incapable of being stirred emotionally or intellectually, unresponsive, extinguished, barren, infertile, obsolete, extinct, stagnant, or exhausted).

Jesus then states to the “Pastor/Angel” of the ‘Church in Sardis’ and to you “Pastors” that:
- Although your Church may be Dead, there still may be time to strengthen (fix and establish) the things that remain and that are ready to die before it is too late.
- You need to do this immediately because Jesus has found that your works (effort, occupation or acts) are not perfect (accomplished, complete or fulfilled) before God.
- Remember therefore how you have received and heard this warning from Jesus through this “Book”, and hold fast and ‘Repent’ (to think differently and afterwards reconsider morally, to feel compunction arising from awareness of guilt), or else Jesus will come upon you as a thief when you are not expecting Him!

Rev 3:2-6
2 Be watchful (be vigilant and keep awake), and strengthen (fix, establish) the things which remain, that are ready to die; for I have not found thy works (effort, occupation or acts) perfect (accomplished, complete or fulfilled) before God.
3 Remember (be mindful) therefore how thou hast received and heard, and hold fast (keep or retain), and repent (to think differently and afterwards reconsider morally, to feel compunction which is anxiety arising from awareness of guilt). If therefore thou shalt not watch (be vigilant and keep awake), I will come on thee as a thief, and thou shalt not know what hour I will come upon thee.

Even if you have a Dead Church, there are a few in your Church that have not defiled their garments and they will walk in White because they are worthy (deserving).

4 Thou hast a few (puny in number) names even in Sardis which have not defiled their garments; and they shall walk with me in white: for they are worthy (deserving).

As the “Pastor/Angel” of your Church, if you along with the part of your ‘Flock’ that is Dead, will Overcome (conquer, prevail, and get the victory over) this problem of being Dead, both you and they can be assured that you will not have your names ‘Blotted Out’ of the ‘Book of Life’!

5 He that overcometh (conquers, prevails, and gets the victory), the same shall be clothed in white raiment (garments or robes); and I will not blot out (smear out, obliterate, erase or wipe away) his name out of the book of life, but I will confess his name before my Father, and before his angels.

“Pastor/Angel”, give ear to what God the Holy Spirit is saying unto you and to your Church.

6 He (the “Pastor/Angel”) that hath an ear, let him hear what the Spirit (God the Holy Spirit) saith unto the churches.

6. PHILADELPHIA:
The “Pastor/Angel” of the ‘Church in Philadelphia’ as well as the Church itself, seems to be a good model and/or example for “Pastors” to have today. Yet there are still some valid points of introspection and warnings that are useful for those of you that may feel you exemplify this type of Church.

In the writing to the “Pastor/Angel” of the ‘Church in Philadelphia’, Jesus is described as Holy (‘hagios’ - which means sacred, pure, morally blameless, and most Holy), and True (Truthful).

Jesus is also described as He that has the ‘Key of David’.
- The ‘Key of David’ refers to the Key of Government and Authority that was and is and will be upon His Shoulder. (Isaiah 9:6-7  Isaiah 22:21-22)
The ‘Key of David’ also includes the role and rule of Jesus as the Head over the Government and Authority of the Church. (Ephesians 1:20-22 Colossians 1:18)

Rev 3:7
7 And to the angel (Pastor) of the church in Philadelphia write; These things saith he that is holy (‘hagios’ - sacred, pure, morally blameless, and most Holy), he that is true (Truthful), he that hath the key of David,…

Here Jesus is also described as ‘He that opens and no man can shut’, and ‘He that shuts and no man can open’.

This description of Jesus means that:

- Jesus is absolutely sovereign in the opening of the Churches in relationship to those who should start a Church, who should run the Church, and who will enter and become a part of the Church.
- Jesus is also absolutely sovereign in the closing of the Churches in relationship to those who will remain in the Church and who will shut the Church.

Remember, any man who attempts to do any of these things on his own without the Authority of Jesus Christ, is just fooling his self and his work is fruitless! (1 Corinthians 3:11-15)

Rev 3:7
7 ...he that openeth (opens up), and no man (man, woman or thing) shuitteth (closes); and shuitteth (closes), and no man (man, woman or thing) openeth (opens up);

Jesus states to the “Pastor/Angel” of the ‘Church in Philadelphia’ and to you “Pastors” that:

- He knows your works (toil, as an effort or occupation, your deeds and doings).
- Because He has Called you into this ‘Office’, He has set before you an open door and no man can shut it.
- Although you as the “Pastor/Angel” may have only a little (least or less, or small in size, quantity and number) ‘dunamis’ power (miraculous power, ability, mighty deeds or wonderful works), you have kept His Word (‘logos’ - doctrine, work) and have not denied the Name of Jesus!
- Because of this, Jesus will make those of the False Jewish Synagogues which say they are Jews and are not, lie; behold, I will make them to come and worship before thy feet and to know that I have loved thee.

(Romans 2:28-29  3:29)
- Because as the “Pastor/Angel” you have kept the word of His own patience (which is cheerful or hopeful endurance, constancy, and patient continuance or waiting), Jesus will keep you from the time of the Great Tribulation!

Rev 3:8-13
8 I know thy works (toil, as an effort or occupation, your deeds and doings): behold, I have set before thee an open door, and no man (man, woman or thing) can shut it: for thou hast a little (least or less, or small in size, quantity and number) strength (‘dunamis’ - miraculous power, ability, mighty deeds or wonderful works), and hast kept my word (‘logos’ - doctrine, work), and hast not denied my name.
9 Behold, I will make them of the synagogue of Satan, which say they are Jews, and are not, but do lie; behold, I will make them to come and worship before thy feet, and to know that I have loved thee.
10 Because thou hast kept the word of my (own) patience (which is cheerful or hopeful endurance, constancy, and patient continuance or waiting), I also will keep thee from the hour (time) of temptation (adversity), which shall come upon all the world, to try (test) them that dwell upon the earth.

An important warning here, especially to you the “Pastor/Angel” is to hold tightly to what you have and let NO MAN, WOMAN or THING take your Crown! (Lamentations 5:16  2 Timothy 4:8  James 1:12  1 Peter 5:4)

11 Behold, I come quickly (shortly, without delay, soon, by surprise, suddenly): hold that fast (retain, keep) which thou hast, that no man (man, woman or thing) take thy crown.

If you overcome (conquer, prevail, and get the victory over) the wiles (methods or trickery) of the enemy (Ephesians 6:11), Jesus will reward you by making you as a pillar to stand in the Temple of God the Father, and you will never have to go out. Jesus will also write upon you the Name of God the Father and the Name of the City of God His Father which is the ‘New Jerusalem’. You will also receive Jesus’ own New Name that He will inscribe upon you!

12 Him that overcometh (conquers, prevails, and gets the victory) will I make a pillar (to stand) in the temple of my God, and he shall go no more out: and I will write upon him the name of my God, and the name of the city of my God, which is new Jerusalem, which cometh down (will descend) out of heaven from my God: and I will write upon him my (own) new name.

“For Pastor/Angel”, give ear to what God the Holy Spirit is saying unto you and to your Church

13 He (the “Pastor/Angel”) that hath an ear, let him hear what the Spirit (God the Holy Spirit) saith unto the churches.

7. LAODICEA:
In the writing to the “Pastor/Angel” of the ‘Church in Laodicea’, Jesus tells him that he and his Church are ‘Lukewarm’.

To be ‘Lukewarm’ means to be:

- Moderately warm - which is lacking conviction, having average or less than average quality, or limited in scope or effect.
- Or Tepid - which is lacking in passion, force, or zest, and/or marked by an absence of enthusiasm or conviction.
- Or Halfhearted - which is lacking heart, spirit, or interest.
- Neither Hot - which in the Greek means ‘fervent’ - which means very hot, or glowing, or exhibiting or marked by great intensity of feeling; also zealous and/or impassioned.
- Nor Cold - which in the Greek means ‘chilly’ - which means noticeably cold or chilling, lacking warmth of feeling and/or unfriendly.

According to Jesus, being ‘Lukewarm’ is the worst position to be in because Jesus will not deal with people that are neither Hot nor Cold. However, once you make a commitment either way, then God will allow circumstances to happen in your life that will get your attention and move you in the direction that
you need to go. Even if things may be going well for you and your Church right now, it still doesn’t mean that you are in the ‘Will of God’.

If you are ‘Lukewarm’, what it does mean is that you are not listening to Jesus but are doing things according to ‘Mans Ways’. Sometimes this will work for a while, but sooner or later you and/or your Church will Fall!

If you are ‘Lukewarm’ the answer for you the “Pastor/Angel” is to ‘Repent’, which means to think differently and afterwards to reconsider morally, and to feel compunction arising from awareness of guilt.

Once you ‘Repent’, Jesus will forgive you and He will stand outside of the door of your Heart and knock. Then you need to hear His Voice which you have not heard for a while, and open up the door of your Heart once again to Jesus!

Here Jesus is described as the Amen, the Faithful (the trustworthy and sure) and True (truthful) Witness (martyr), and the beginning (ruler or commencement) of the creation of God. (Revelation 1:8 Romans 1:20)

Rev 3:14
14 And unto the angel of the church of the Laodiceans write; These things saith the Amen, the faithful (the trustworthy and sure) and true (truthful) witness (martyr), the beginning (ruler or commencement) of the creation of God;

Jesus states to the “Pastor/Angel” of the ‘Church in Laodicea’ and to you “Pastors” that:

- He knows your works (toil, as an effort or occupation, deeds, doings), and that you are neither Cold nor Hot.
- Jesus then states that He wishes you were one or the other so that He could work with you.
- Because you are ‘Lukewarm’ and neither Cold nor Hot, He will spit or vomit you out of His mouth.
- One of the problems with the ‘Lukewarm’ “Pastor/Angel” is that of wealth. This has caused you to think and to say that you are rich and have become wealthy and that you have need of nothing (none, nobody, neither anything);
- But in God’s eyes you are actually: Miserable - which means being in a pitiable state of distress or unhappiness (as from want or shame); wretchedly inadequate or meager; causing extreme discomfort or unhappiness; or being likely to discredit or shame.
  Pitiable - which means deserving or exciting pity. Also of a kind to evoke mingled pity and contempt especially because of inadequacy.
  And Poor - which means lacking material possessions of or relating to, or characterized by poverty; less than adequate; small in worth or inferior in quality or value.
- You are also mentally blind and have become naked because you are walking ‘without’ your Garments of Righteousness! (James 5:2 Revelation 16:15)
- The remedy from Jesus for your situation is that you need to listen to ‘His Counsel’.
- Then you need to redeem from Him His refined Gold that has been tried in the fire that you may truly become rich.
- Also, you need to ‘Repent’, and ask for Jesus to restore you with His White Raiment (garments or robes) so that you may be clothed, and that the shame (disgrace) of your current nakedness (nudity) does not appear (or is not rendered apparent or manifested).
Finally, if you haven’t done so, you need to anoint your eyes with eye-salve so that you may truly see (take heed, perceive or beware of) the problem of being ‘Lukewarm’!

Rev 3:15-22
15 I know thy works (toil, as an effort or occupation, deeds, doings), that thou art neither cold (chilly) nor hot (fervent): I would (I wish) thou wert (that you have been) cold (chilly) or hot (fervent).
16 So then because thou art lukewarm (tepid), and neither cold (chilly) nor hot (fervent), I will spue (vomit) thee out of my mouth.
17 Because thou sayest, I am rich, and increased with goods (become wealthy), and have need of nothing (none, nobody, neither anything); and knowest (consider, perceive, and understand) not that thou art wretched (miserable), and miserable (pitiable), and poor (denoting absolute or public begging), and blind (mentally), and naked (nude):
18 I counsel thee to buy (redeem or buy back) of me gold tried (refined) in the fire, that thou mayest be rich; and white raiment (garments or robes), that thou mayest be clothed, and that the shame (disgrace) of thy nakedness (nudity) do not appear (or is rendered apparent or manifested); and anoint thine eyes with eyesalve (‘poultice’ - which is a soft usually heated and sometimes medicated mass spread on cloth and applied to sores or other lesions), that thou mayest see (take heed, perceive and beware).

Jesus then states to the “Pastor/Angel” of the ‘Church in Laodicea’ and to you “Pastors”:
- Always remember that those whom Jesus Loves (‘phileo’ - to be a friend, to be fond of as an individual, to have affection for denoting personal attachment), He always rebukes (admonishes, convicts, convinces, tells a fault and reproves) and chastens (trains up as a child, educates, disciplines by punishment and instructs and teaches).
- Therefore, many of you have been deceived in thinking that because all seems to be going well with you and your ‘Flock’, you are OK! But actually you are ‘out of order’ and Jesus has abandoned you.
- Therefore, you need to be zealous (be zealously affected) and Repent (to think differently and afterwards reconsider morally, and to feel compunction arising from awareness of guilt!)
- Jesus is standing at your door and is knocking. If you will hear His voice and open up the door, He will come in and Dine with you and you with Him!
- If you Overcome (conquer, prevail, and get the victory over) your ‘Lukewarm’ state, Jesus will allow you to sit down with Him in His Throne.

19 As many as I love (‘phileo’ - to be a friend, to be fond of as an individual, to have affection for denoting personal attachment), I rebuke (admonish, convict, convince, tells a fault and reprove) and chasten (train up as a child, educate, discipline by punishment, instruct and teach): be zealous (be zealously affected) therefore, and repent (to think differently and afterwards reconsider morally, to feel compunction arising from awareness of guilt).
20 Behold, I stand at the door, and knock: if any man (anyone, any person or anybody) hear my voice, and open the door, I will come in to him, and will sup (dine) with him, and be with me.
21 To him that overcometh (conquers, prevails, and gets the victory) will I grant to sit (sit down) with me in my throne, even as I also overcame (conquered, prevailed, and got the victory), and am set down with my Father in his throne.
“Pastor/Angel”, please give ear to what God the Holy Spirit is saying unto you and to your Church.

22 He (the “Pastor/Angel”) that hath an ear, let him hear what the Spirit (God the Holy Spirit) saith unto the churches.

8. FINALLY:
Finally in the conclusion of this message from Jesus to you the “Pastors/Angels” of the ‘Seven Churches’ of today, Jesus states:

Rev 22:16
16 I Jesus have sent mine angel (32 ‘Aggelos’ - Angel, Pastor, Messenger) to testify (to charge, to give evidence and to bear record) unto you these things in the churches. I am the root and the offspring (‘genos’ - kindred) of David, and the bright (magnificent in appearance) and morning star.

In other words, Jesus is telling you “Pastors” in this Message, that as a Leader over your own individual Church, you need to evaluate and/or re-evaluate yourself as you compare yourself to the “Angels” of the ‘Seven Churches’.
Once you have done this, if it is necessary, Turn and ‘Repent’ and make any changes that are necessary in how you Lead and whatever else you need to do to improve yourself and to become a ‘True’ “Pastor/Angel” of God.

As the “Messenger” to your own ‘Church’, you are also responsible to Lead and to Guide All of your ‘Flock’, including the Leadership and Staff, into any changes that they too may require in order to make your Church into what Jesus expects it to be.
Remember, this is what Jesus ‘commands’, not ‘suggests’, in His Message to you.
You (the “Pastor/Angel”) that have an ear, hear what God the Holy Spirit is saying unto you and to your Church!

Amen!

VI. CHURCH LEADERSHIP:
The following Section consists of the various aspects of ‘Church Leadership’. As a “Pastor” one of your main responsibilities is to organize and to oversee all those within your ‘Church Leadership’, with the possible exception of the “Bishops”.

A. THE STAFF:
The following are the individuals and/or groups that generally make up the ‘Staff’ of a Church.
Because the Bible is somewhat vague regarding a specific design or formula for a Church ‘Staff’, I believe God has purposely left room for a ‘Staff’ to be designed to meet the needs of each Church which is best suited for its people, culture, personalities, location, size, etc.
(Read the Book “Christian Leadership” written by Timothy II)

1. THE BOARD:
Although the Bible does not seem to specifically designate a ‘Board’ for a Church, most Churches have a ‘Board of Directors’; in fact, in many countries a ‘Board of Directors’ is required by law for all incorporated Ministries.
A ‘Board’ is a group of persons having managerial, supervisory, investigatory, and/or advisory powers, such as a ‘Board’ of Directors.

A Director is one who directs such as the head of an organized group or administrative unit, or one of a group of persons entrusted with the overall direction of a corporate enterprise.

A Corporation is a body formed and authorized by law to act as a single person although constituted by one or more persons and legally endowed with various rights and duties including the capacity of succession; and/or an association of employers and employees in a basic industry or of members of a profession organized as an organ of political representation in a corporative state.

To Incorporate is to unite or work into something already existent so as to form an indistinguishable whole, or to blend or combine thoroughly; also to form into a legal corporation, to admit to membership in a corporate body, to unite in or as one body, or to form or become a corporation.

The ‘Board of Directors’ of a Church often consists of the ‘Elders’ and/or ‘Deacons’ of the Church. Although Church ‘Boards’ are not all the same, there are some important guidelines that God has set in order to help “Pastors” on how the ‘Board’ should be set up, function, and some of its restrictions.

The most important restriction according to the Bible is that “The Pastor” is the Main Authority over the Church, NOT the ‘Board’. This is specifically outlined in Revelation 1, 2 & 3 and has been discussed in the Chapter on ‘ANGEL’! Jesus has designated these Scriptures for the “Pastors/Angels” of the Seven Churches. (Revelation 1:1-5 1:20)

In these Scriptures Jesus holds the “Pastors/Angels” responsible for their Churches and they will stand alone before the Judgment Seat of Christ to declare what they have done both good and bad with their Call as a “Pastor” and with their Church. (Romans 14:10 2 Corinthians 5:10)

Since Jesus is the Head of all of the Churches He is the Head of all the “Pastors” and they are responsible to Him. (Ephesians 5:23-24 Colossians 1:18)

Therefore, it is important that the ‘Board of Directors’ know their place and to understand that God will allow them to function only in an advisory capacity and NOT to run or rule the Church!

2. ASSISTANT AND/OR ASSOCIATE PASTORS:
Most Churches have what they call ‘Assistant’ and/or ‘Associate’ “Pastors”. However, there are no specific directions in the Bible to who, what or how many ‘Assistant’ and/or ‘Associate’ “Pastors” there should be.

- An ‘Assistant’ is a person who assists, or is a helper, also a person holding an ‘assistantship’.
- An ‘Associate’ is to join as a partner, friend, or companion, to keep company with, to join or connect together, or to bring together into relationship in any of various intangible ways.

There are some important qualifications in the Bible that should be observed when Appointing or Ordaining ‘Assistant’ and/or ‘Associate’ “Pastors”.

- They should show evidence of moving in the ‘Charisma Gifts’ of the Holy Spirit.
- Those that are working in the ‘Administration’ of the Church should be able to display the manifestation of the ‘Gifts of Administrations’.

-
Those that work in the ‘Operation’ of the Church should be able to display the manifestation of the ‘Gifts of Operations’.

‘Administrations’ means and/or is a performance of executive duties; the act or process of administering; the execution of public affairs as distinguished from policy-making; a body of persons who administer; a governmental agency or board; or the term of office of an administrative officer or body.

‘Operations’ means and/or is a performance of a practical work or of something involving the practical application of principles or processes; the quality or state of being functional or operative; the agency of an organization charged with carrying on the principal planning and operating functions of a headquarters and its subordinate units.

1 Cor 12:1
Now concerning spiritual (Spirituals, or Divinely supernatural) gifts, brethren, I would not have you ignorant.

1 Cor 12:4-6
Now there are diversities (1243 ‘diairesis’ - a distinction, a variety, a difference, a division or separate) of gifts (‘Charisma’ - a Divine gratuity, a Spiritual endowment, a religious qualification, a miraculous faculty or free gift), but the same (Holy) Spirit.

5 And there are differences (1243 ‘diairesis’ - a distinction, a variety, a diversity, a division or separate) of administrations (‘diakonia’ - ministering, ministry, service or office), but the same Lord.

6 And there are diversities (1243 ‘diairesis’ - a distinction, a variety, a difference, a division or separate) of operations (‘energema’ - effects, or workings), but it is the same God which worketh (‘energeo’ - is active, efficient, effectual, fervent, and mighty) all in all.

1 Cor 12:7
But the manifestation (exhibition, expression or bestowment) of the Spirit is given to every man to profit withal.

I have found through my own experience as a Head Football Coach and in the Ministry for many years, that there are two types of ‘Assistants’. The first are those that are ‘Assistants’ waiting to become Head Coaches or let’s say Called to be Senior “Pastors”. These ‘Assistants’ should be given all types of responsibilities that are closely related to the role of the Senior “Pastor”. Since they need to learn all about the role and work of the Senior “Pastor” they should be included in and attend all the functions of the Church. They should also be closely observed and evaluated by the Senior “Pastor”.

The second type of ‘Assistant’ is the kind that is not Called to be a Senior “Pastor” and will always be an ‘Assistant’. These people do not need to know all about the role and work of the Senior “Pastor”; therefore, they are better off if you just give them one specific responsibility and let them be completely in charge of that area. Turn them loose and let them be creative in that area and they will never grow tired of it and will take great pleasure in it. These ‘Assistants’ do not need to attend all your meetings and functions nor do they need to learn about everything that you do.

Other ‘Assistants’ that work strictly in the ‘Administrations’ and/or ‘Operations’ of the Church also need to be given full responsibility and allowed to be creative in their area of work, but they too do not have to be involved in all of the meetings or activities of the Church work, nor do they need to learn about everything that you do.

Of course, all these ‘Assistants’ need to receive training and experience before they can take over full
responsibility, but they will eventually be able to do what you ask and will remain loyal and content for many years.

I speak with some authority in this area because I have had three ‘Assistants’ that remained with me for over thirty years. I also have had many players that ended up coaching with me and eventually became Head Coaches themselves.

3. ELDERS:
‘Elders’ are those people that are Seniors in your Church. Some of them may be elderly in age and some of them may be elderly in the years of Service in your Church. These ‘Elders’ sometimes make up the ‘Board of Directors’ as an advisory body for the Senior “Pastor” of the Church.

The Dictionary states:

- An ‘Elder’ is one who is older, an aged person, one having authority by virtue of age and experience, any of various Officers of religious groups such as a Presbyter, a permanent Officer elected by a Presbyterian Congregation and ordained to serve on the session and assist the Pastor at Communion.
- A Presbyter is a member of the governing body of an early Christian Church, a member of the order of Priests in Churches having Episcopal hierarchies that include Bishops, Priests, and Deacons.

An ‘Elder’ in Hebrew is:

OT:2205 zaqen (zaw-kane’); from OT:2204; old:
KJV - aged, ancient (man), elder (-est), old (man, men and women), senator.

An ‘Elder’ in Greek is:

NT:4245 presbuteros (pres-boo’-ter-os); comparative of presbus (elderly); older; as noun, a senior; specifically, an Israelite Sanhedrist (also figuratively, member of the celestial council) or Christian "presbyter":
KJV - elder (-est), old.

Here Paul writes to Titus that he should set in Order the things that are lacking by ordaining (or appointing) ‘Elders’ in every city just as Paul had appointed (or ordained) him. Thus ordaining and/or appointing ‘Elders’ in your Church is recommended to keep your Church in Order.

Titus 1:5-9
5 For this cause left I thee in Crete, that thou shouldest set in order the things that are wanting (lacking or absent), and ordain (‘kathistemi’ - to designate, to appoint) elders (presbuteros) in every city, as I had appointed (‘diatasso’ - ordained or set in Order) thee:

Here Paul sets up the criteria for becoming an ‘Elder’:

- An ‘Elder’ must be blameless, irreproachable and un-accused as a steward (or Overseer) of God.
- A married ‘Elder’ must be a Husband having only one Wife.
- An ‘Elder’ must have Faithful Children who are not accused of ‘riot’ (or unsavedness, excess or
‘profligate behavior’ - which is completely given up to dissipation and licentiousness, and/or wildly extravagant). Neither should the Children be accused of being unruly, un-subdued, insubordinate in fact or temper, or disobedient.

- As an Overseer, an ‘Elder’ should not be self-willed, self-pleasing, arrogant, nor soon angry or ‘irascible’ - which means hot tempered or easily provoked. (1 Timothy 5:22)
- An ‘Elder’ should not be given to wine or ‘tippling’ - which means to drink liquor especially by habit or to excess or to drink (liquor) especially continuously in small amounts.
- Neither should an ‘Elder’ be a striker or a ‘smiter’ - which means to be quarrelsome or of a combative nature.
- An ‘Elder’ should not be given to filthy lucre nor given to greed or sordid gain. (1 Timothy 6:9-10)
- An ‘Elder’ should be a lover of hospitality and fond of guests.
- An ‘Elder’ should be a lover of good men and a promoter of virtue.
- An ‘Elder’ should be ‘Sober’ which includes being sound in mind, moderate as to opinion or passion, and discreet.
- An ‘Elder’ should be ‘Just’ which means equitable in character or act, and innocent and righteous.
- An ‘Elder’ should be ‘Holy’ which means having a Divine quality. In the Greek this means to be merciful, proper and right by Divine character. Remember, God is worthy of complete devotion as one perfect in goodness and righteousness. (Psalms 99:9) Therefore, an ‘Elder’ should be devoted entirely to God and to the work of God.
- An ‘Elder’ should be ‘Temperate’ which means to be moderate and self-controlled especially in indulgence of appetites or desires.
- ‘Elders’ should ‘Hold fast’ (hold to, adhere to, support and care for) the Faithful Word (logos) of God, that you have been taught.
- If you ‘Hold Fast’ the Word of God, as ‘Elders’ you will be able by ‘Sound Doctrine’ to exhort and to convince (admonish, convict, rebuke and reprove) the ‘Gainsayers’ who are those that dispute, refuse, contradict and/or speak against you!

6 If any be blameless (irreproachable, un-accused), the husband of (only) one wife, having faithful (trustworthy, believing, sure and true) children not accused of riot (of unsavedness, excess or profligate behavior) or unruuly (un-subdued, insubordinate in fact or temper, and/or disobedient).
7 For a bishop (‘episkopos’ - overseer) must be blameless (irreproachable, un-accused), as the steward (Overseer) of God; not selfwilled (self-pleasing, arrogant), not soon angry (‘irascible’ - which means hot tempered and easily provoked anger), not given to wine (‘tippling’ - which means to drink liquor especially by habit or to excess, or to drink (liquor) especially continuously in small amounts), no striker (not a smiter, quarrelsome or of a combative nature), not given to filthy lucre (not given to greed or sordid gain);
8 But a lover of hospitality (hospitalable, fond of guests), a lover of good men (a promoter of virtue), sober (sound in mind, moderate as to opinion or passion, and discreet), just (equitable in character or act, innocent, righteous), holy (merciful, proper and right by Divine character), temperate (moderate, self-controlled);
9 Holding fast (holding to, adhering to, supporting and caring for) the faithful (trustworthy, trustful, sure and true) word (‘logos’) as he hath been taught, that he may be able by sound (uncorrupt or true in Doctrine) doctrine both to exhort and to convince (admonish, convict, rebuke and reprove) the gainsayers (those that dispute, refuse, contradict or speak against).
4. DEACONS:
‘Deacons’ are those men and women of God that are Called to Minister as Servants in the Church.
‘Deacons’ are persons that love waiting on people and are not out to build themselves up nor are they looking for prestige or promotions. Many possess the Charisma Gift of ‘Helps’. (1 Corinthians 12:28)

According to the Dictionary:
- A ‘Deacon’ is a subordinate Officer in a Christian Church such as a Roman Catholic, Anglican, or Eastern Orthodox cleric ranking next below a Priest, or one of the laymen elected by a Church with Congregational polity (the form of government of a religious denomination) to serve in Worship, in Pastoral care, and on Administrative Committees.
- A Deaconess is a woman chosen to assist in the Church Ministry; specifically one in a Protestant order.

‘Deacon’ in Greek is:

NT:1249 diakonos (dee-ak'-on-os); probably from an obsolete diako (to run on errands; compare NT:1377); an attendant, i.e. (genitive case) a waiter (at table or in other menial duties); specially, a Christian teacher and pastor (technically, a deacon or deaconess):
KJV - deacon, minister, servant.

Here the twelve “Apostles of the Lamb” which at this time now included Matthias, called the multitude of the Disciples to themselves and stated that instead of doing the work that others could do, they needed to concentrate more on studying the ‘Word of God’. This was so that they would be better prepared for the Work that God had Called them to do.

Acts 6:2-3
2 Then the twelve called the multitude (a large number, or company) of the disciples unto them, and said, It is not reason (reasonable or fitting) that we should leave the word (logos) of God, and serve (to attend or to wait upon) (Also to act as a Christian Deacon or to use the Office of a Deacon) tables.

The “Apostles” then told the Disciples to ‘select or choose’ seven men as ‘Deacons’ that were well reported of and FULL of the Holy Ghost and the Spirit of Wisdom. Then the ‘Apostles’ would ‘appoint or ordain’ them over this business.

3 Wherefore, brethren, look ye out (select) among you seven men of honest report (that are well reported of), full (filled, covered over, or complete with) of the Holy Ghost and wisdom (the Spirit of Wisdom), whom we may appoint (ordain) over this business.

In the following Scriptures Paul writes to Timothy and lays out the criteria for the ‘qualifications’ that a ‘Deacon’ and/or a ‘Deaconess’ must have before they are ‘appointed or ordained’ for Service.

- A ‘Deacon’ and/or a ‘Deaconess’ must be ‘Grave’ which is to be honorable and honest. To be ‘Grave’ also means to be ‘venerable’ - which means calling forth respect through age, character and attainments.
- A ‘Deacon’ and/or a ‘Deaconess’ cannot be ‘Double-Tongued’ which means to be insincere, hypocritical, double minded, or ‘equivocal’ - which means to be subject to two or more
interpretations, and usually used to mislead or to confuse. (James 1:8  4:8)

- **A ‘Deacon’ and/or a ‘Deaconess’ should not be subject to ‘Drinking’ too much wine nor ‘Drinking’ it too often.**
- **They also should not be given to ‘Greed’ or to sordid gain, especially in seeking reward for their service to the Church.** (1 Timothy 6:5-6)
- **A ‘Deacon’ and/or a ‘Deaconess’ should ‘Hold’ or keep the ‘mystery of the Faith’ which means to keep the moral conviction of the Truthfulness of God deep within them-selves.**
- **The potential ‘Deacons’ and/or ‘Deaconesses’ should first be ‘Proven’ before they are appointed to the Office. This should be done by discerning who the potential candidates are and examining them; then testing, trying and proving them by carefully watching them as they perform various duties that you give them to perform.**
- **Those in the Office of a ‘Deacon’ should be found ‘Blameless’ and irreproachable.**
- **The ‘Deacons’ and/or ‘Deaconesses’ spouses must also be ‘Grave’ - which is to be honorable and honest. To be ‘Grave’ also means to be ‘venerable’ - which means calling forth respect through age, character and attainments.**
- **The spouses must not be ‘Slanderers’ - which is to be a false accuser or a ‘traducer’ - which means to expose someone to shame or blame by means of falsehood and/or misrepresentation.**
- **Spouses need to be ‘Sober’ or ‘circumspect’ - which means to be careful to consider all circumstances and possible consequences.**
- **Spouses need to be ‘Faithful’ - which means to be trustworthy, sure and true in all things.**
- **The ‘Deacons’ must be the husbands of only one wife.**
- **The ‘Deacons’ must ‘Rule’ well over their children and their family and household.**
- **If you use the Office of a ‘Deacon’ well, the results will be you will acquire to yourselves a good standing or grade of dignity, and great assurance and confidence in the Faith, which is in Jesus Christ.**

**1 Tim 3:8-13**

8 **Likewise (in like manner must the deacons (‘diakonos’ - Deacons and/or Deaconesses) be grave** (honorable, honest and ‘venerable’ - which means calling forth respect through age, character and attainments), **not double tongued** (to be insincere, hypocritical, double minded, or ‘equivocal’ - which means subject to two or more interpretations and usually used to mislead or to confuse), **not given to much** (a great deal of or too often) **wine, not greedy of filthy lucre** (not given to greed or sordid gain);
9 **Holding (keeping) the mystery of the faith** (the moral conviction of the truthfulness of God) **in a pure conscience.**
10 **And let these (‘houtos’ - same men or women) also first be proved** (discerned, examined, tested, tried and approved); **then let them use the office of a deacon** (‘diakoneo’), **being found blameless** (irreproachable).
11 **Even so must their wives be grave** (honorable, honest and ‘venerable’ - which means calling forth respect through age, character and attainments), **not slanderers** (a false accuser or a ‘traducer’ - which means to expose to shame or blame by means of falsehood and/or misrepresentation), **sober** (‘circumspect’ - which means careful to consider all circumstances and possible consequences), **faithful** (trustworthy, sure and true) **in all things.**
12 **Let the deacons (‘diakonos’) be the husbands of (only) one wife, ruling** (maintaining rule over) **their children and their own houses** (family and household) **well.**
13 **For they that have used the office of a deacon (‘diakoneo’) well purchase (acquire) to themselves a good degree** (step or standing, or grade of dignity), **and great boldness** (assurance or confidence) **in
the faith which is in Christ Jesus.

5. BISHOPS:
Although the Office of the ‘Bishop’ is not a part of the “Five Fold Ministry”, the ‘Bishop’ is basically an appointed position for those who have been deemed experienced enough to ‘Oversee’ other “Pastors”. In most cases a ‘Bishop’ is a person that has formally been a “Pastor” and is part of a group of Churches that have been formed together such as a Denomination.

According to the Dictionary a ‘Bishop’ is:
- Literally an ‘Overseer’.
- One having Spiritual or Ecclesiastical supervision which is of or relating to a Church especially as an established institution.
- An Anglican, Eastern Orthodox, or Roman Catholic clergyman ranking above a Priest, having authority to ordain and confirm, and typically governing a Diocese.
- Any of various Protestant clerical Officials who superintend other clergy.

According to the Dictionary a ‘Bishoprick’ is:
- The Office of Bishop.

According to the Dictionary an ‘Episcopate’ is:
- The rank or Office of or term of a Bishop.

According to the Dictionary a ‘Diocese’ is:
- The territorial jurisdiction of a Bishop.
- The body of Bishops (as in a country).

The following is the meaning of the term ‘Bishop’ in the Greek:

**NT:1985 episkopos** (ep-isk’-kop-os); from NT:1909 and NT:4649 (in the sense of NT:1983); a superintendent, i.e. Christian officer in genitive case charge of a (or the) church (literally or figuratively):
KJV - bishop, overseer.

**NT:1984 episkope** (ep-iskop-ay'); from NT:1980; inspection (for relief); by implication, superintendence; specially, the Christian "episcopate":
KJV - the office of a "bishop", bishoprick, visitation.

A ‘Bishop’ in the Greek is called an ‘Overseer’ or is one that has the ‘Oversight’ of a Church or The Church which could include more than one Church.

The Bible states that if you desire the Office of a ‘Bishop’ you desire a ‘good work’.

**1 Tim 3:1**
1 This is a true saying, If a man desire the office of a bishop (1984 ‘episcopos’), he desireth a good (valuable, virtuous and worthy) work.

In the following Scriptures Paul writes to Timothy and lays out the criteria for the ‘qualifications’ of a
‘Bishop’. In them Paul points out that:

- A ‘Bishop’ should **not** be appointed that is a ‘novice’, because being too young in the Lord he might become lifted up with ‘pride’ and fall into the condemnation of the Devil.
- A “Bishop” must have a ‘good report’ (evidence, record, testimony or witness) with his neighbors (those outside the Church), because if he does not it will cause dissention in the neighborhood and he might fall into ‘reproach’ and the Devil will use that as a snare or trap.

1 Tim 3:6-7
6 **Not a novice** (newly planted or a young convert), **lest being lifted up with pride** (inflated, self-conceited, high minded) **he fall into the condemnation of the devil.**
7 **Moreover he must have a good report** (evidence, record, testimony or witness) **of them which are without** (from outside); **lest he be fall into reproach** (the defaming, railing, chiding, taunting or ‘contumely’ - which is harsh language or treatment arising from haughtiness and contempt) **and the snare** (trap or temptation) **of the devil.**

Other important ‘qualifications’ for a ‘Bishop’ to have are:

- The ‘Charisma Gifts’ of ‘Administrations’ and ‘Operations’.
- These Gifts consist of a distinctive variety of different types of ‘Administrative’ duties which include serving, aiding, teaching and Ministering to those under you.
- The Gifts also include the effective and active working of ‘Operations’ which should result in a mighty and powerful display of ‘energema’ (energy) in those that are chosen to do the work of the ‘Bishop’.

1 Cor 12:4-6
4 **Now there are diversities** (1243 ‘diairesis’) **of gifts** (‘charismas’), **but the same Spirit.**
5 **And there are differences** (1243 ‘diairesis’) **of administrations** (‘diakonia’ - attendance as a servant, aid, official service, especially of the Christian teacher; also an administering Office for relief, and service), **but the same Lord.**
6 **And there are diversities** (1243 ‘diairesis’) **of operations** (‘energema’ - an effect or working or to be active and efficient; also to do or be effectual, fervent and mighty in work), **but it is the same God which worketh all in all.**

(For a more in-depth study of the role of a ‘Bishop’, Read the Study Guide “The Bishop Ministry” written by Timothy II)

6. **COUNSELORS:**
Church ‘Counselors’ can consist of any of the various ‘Church Leaders’. However, one of the problems, we have today in America and some other countries is that most ‘Church Counselors’ must be ‘Officially Certified’ by the government. This means that they have been trained in ‘Man’s Psychology’, which can cause the ‘Flock’ of God to be ‘Counseled’ through ‘Man’s Wisdom’ and not ‘God’s Wisdom’. (Read the Tracts “God’s Psychology” & “Man’s Psychology” written by Timothy II)

According to the Dictionary:
- A ‘Counselor’ is a person who gives advice or counseling such as a marriage counselor.
‘Counsel’ is advice given especially as a result of consultation; also a policy or plan of action or behavior.

A ‘Consultant’ is one who gives professional advice or services.

To ‘Consult’ is to have regard to, to ask the advice or opinion of, to consult an individual, to deliberate together, or to serve as a consultant.

A ‘Consultation’ is the act of consulting or conferring

‘Counselor’ and/or ‘Counsel’ in Hebrew is:

**OT:3289 va’ats** (yaw-ats’); a primitive root; to advise; reflexively, to deliberate or resolve:
KJV - advertise, take advise, advise (well), consult, (give, take) counsel (-lor), determine, devise, guide, purpose.

**OT:5475 cowd** (sode); from OT:3245; a session, i.e. company of persons (in close deliberation); by implication, intimacy, consultation, a secret:
KJV - assembly, consel, inward, secret (counsel).

**OT:6098 `etsah** (ay-tsay’); from OT:3289; advice; by implication, plan; also prudence:
KJV - advice, advisement, counsel (l- [or]), purpose.

**OT:7592 sha’al** (shaw-al’); or sha’el (shaw-ale’); a primitive root; to inquire; by implication, to request; by extension, to demand:
KJV - ask (counsel, on), beg, borrow, lay to charge, consult, demand, desire, earnestly, enquire, greet, obtain leave, lend, pray, request, require, salute, straitly, surely, wish.

‘Counselor’ and/or ‘Counsel’ in Greek is:

**NT:1010 bouleutes** (bool-yoo-tace’); from NT:1011; an adviser, i.e. (specially) a councillor or member of the Jewish Sanhedrin:
KJV - counsellor.

**NT:1011 bouleuo** (bool-yoo’-o); from NT:1012; to advise, i.e. (reflexively) deliberate, or (by implication) resolve:
KJV - consult, take counsel, determine, be minded, purpose.

**NT:1012 boule** (boo-lay’); from NT:1014; volition, i.e. (objectively) advice, or (by implication) purpose:
KJV - advise, counsel, will.

**NT:4823 sumbouleuo** (soom-bool-yoo’-o); from NT:4862 and NT:1011; to give (or take) advice jointly, i.e. recommend, deliberate or determine:
KJV - consult, (give, take) counsel (together).

**NT:4824 sumboulion** (soom-bool-lee-on); neuter of a presumed derivative of NT:4825; advisement; specifically, a deliberative body, i.e. the provincial assessors or lay-court:
KJV - consultation, counsel, council.

**NT:4825 sumboulos** (soom’-boo-los); from NT:4862 and NT:1012; a consultor, i.e. adviser:
KJV - counsellor.

As Christians, we know that God is the only True ‘Counselor’ and not those men that have influenced the study of Psychology such as Charles Darwin, or the Fathers of Psychology such as Sigmund Freud and Carl Jung. The problems with the thinking of these men can be easily understood if you search their backgrounds and theories.
The following is just a short summary of the backgrounds and theories of these men as found in the Book Introduction to psychology By: Arno F. Wittig Ph.D. Professor of Psychology Ball State University & Published by McGraw Hill Book Company.

- **Charles Darwin** was an English naturalist. He established that all species of life have descended over time from common ancestors, and proposed the scientific theory that this branching pattern of evolution resulted from a process that he called ‘Natural Selection’. He published “The Origin of Species” in 1859 which led to ‘The Theory of Evolution’. Unfortunately many Psychologists believe that understanding and using ‘The Theory of Evolution’ helps them to understand the heritage of Human Behavior.

- **Sigmund Freud** was an Austrian neurologist who founded the discipline of Psychoanalysis. Freud's family and ancestry were Jewish. Freud always considered himself a Jew even though he rejected Judaism and had a critical view of religion. He believed that much of our Behavior was sexually related including such things as his ‘Motivational Theory of Personality’, his ‘Pleasure Principle’, and his belief that personality development was advanced through ‘Psychosexual Stages’.

- **Carl Jung** was a Swiss Psychiatrist and the founder of analytical Psychology. Jung is considered the first modern Psychiatrist to view the human psyche as "by nature religious" and make it the focus of exploration. His interest however in Philosophy and the Occult led many to view him as a mystic, although it is believed that Jung's ambition was to be seen as a man of Science.

To use and/or to follow any of these men’s theories which may have some partial truths in them is to mistakenly follow ‘Man’s Wisdom’ and ‘Counsel’ and not God’s.

The following Scriptures are inserted here to help give you the “Pastor” some insight into ‘God’s Counsel’ and what God would have you to follow when ‘Counseling’ your ‘Flock’.

The Bible States:
That we are to give and to receive the ‘Counsel of God’ because no man has directed God the Holy Spirit, nor has been His ‘Counselor’ or taught (instructed or advised) Him!

**Isa 40:13-14**

13 Who hath directed the Spirit of the LORD, or being his counselor (6098) hath taught (instructed or advised) him?

God the Holy Spirit has not taken ‘Counsel’ from nor been instructed by any man; neither has He been taught in the way of judgment. He has also not been taught knowledge nor shown the way of understanding.

14 With whom took he counsel (3289), and who instructed him, and taught him in the path (way) of judgment (justice), and taught him knowledge, and shewed to him the way of understanding (intelligence, reason, skillfulness and/or wisdom)?

Therefore the ‘Counsel’ of the Lord is His and it will stand forever!

**Prov 8:14**
14 **Counsel (6098)** is mine, and **sound wisdom** (support, ability, help and intellectual understanding); **I am understanding** (knowledge, perfect understanding and wisdom); **I have strength** (victory, mastery and mighty power).

Ps 33:11
11 **The counsel (6098) of the LORD standeth** (abides, continues, endures, remains) **for ever, the thoughts of his heart to all generations.**

Prov 19:21
21 **There are many devices in a man's heart; nevertheless the counsel (6098) of the LORD, that shall stand** (abide, confirm, continue, endure, help, lift up, raise up, remain, establish, and strengthen).

There is no ‘Counsel’ that can stand or succeed that is against, opposite or counterpart to the Lord. A good example of this is what ‘Man’s Counsel’ has done in America in the treatment of behavior and discipline. Because of ‘Man’s Counsel’, we no longer use God’s discipline and the use of punishment for the poor behavior of our children. This is one of the main reasons why America has been inundated with the problems of drug use, alcohol use, and sex abuse etc., which is running ramped throughout our children and teenagers. (Read the Study Guide on “Discipline” written by Timothy II)

Prov 21:30
30 **There is no wisdom nor understanding nor counsel (6098) against** (opposite or counterpart to) **the LORD.**

One of the ‘Seven Attributes’ of the Holy Spirit is “The Spirit of Counsel”. “The Spirit of Counsel” is available to all “Pastors” as well as to all Christians; all you have to do is ask God for it. (Luke 11:13) (Read the Tract “The Spirit of Counsel” written by Timothy II)

Isa 11:2
2 **And the spirit of the LORD shall rest upon him (Jesus), the spirit of wisdom and understanding, the spirit of counsel (6098) and might, the spirit of knowledge and of the fear of the LORD;**

The problem with ‘Man’s Psychology’ is that there is no mention or condemnation of Sin. In ‘Man’s Psychology’ we are taught that when a person falls he/she does not commit Sin, but is merely doing something that might be considered wrong, and others are usually to blame for it.

‘Sin’ in the Dictionary is:
- An offense against religious or moral law.
- An action that is or is felt to be highly reprehensible.
- An often serious shortcoming or fault.
- Transgression of the law of God.
- A vitiated or faulty or defective state of human nature in which the self is estranged from God.

‘Sin’ in Hebrew is:

OT:6588 pesha` (peh'-shah); from OT:6586; **a revolt** (national, moral or religious):
KJV - rebellion, sin, transgression, trespass.
OT:2403 chatta'ah (khat-taw'; or chatta'th (khat-tawth'); from OT:2398; **an offence** (sometimes habitual sinfulness), and its penalty, occasion, sacrifice, or expiation; also (concretely) **an offender**:
KJV - punishment (of sin), purifying (-fication for sin), sin (-ner, offering).

An example of the misuse of ‘Man’s Psychology’ is that if we or our Children abuse alcohol, drugs, etc., we can blame it on our parents so that we are not responsible for our own actions. Thus through ‘Man’s Psychology’ we and/or our Children do not admit that we have Sinned and therefore we actually cover our Sins. Because of this, we eventually add Sin to Sin and will never receive God’s forgiveness. Instead, we need to confess our Sins and ask God to forgive us of those Sins, and then Turn from them and Repent. (1 John 1:9-10)

Prov 28:13
13 He that covereth (3680 - conceals or hides) his sins (6588) shall not prosper (be good, meet or profitable): but whoso confesseth and forsaketh (loosens, relinquishes and leaves) them shall have mercy (compassion, love and pity).

Isa 30:1
1 Woe to the rebellious (to turn away, backsliding, revolting, stubborn, or morally ‘refractory’ - which means to resist control or authority and/or resistant to treatment or cure) children, saith the LORD, that take counsel (6098), but not of me; and that cover (5258 - pour out, offer or set up) with a covering (4541 - a vail), but not of my spirit, that they may add sin to sin (2403):

In concluding this section, let me remind you as a “Pastor” that it does not matter what the Government requires of you in your use of ‘Counselors’ that have only been Certificated by them; God expects you to use His ‘Counsel’ when ‘Counseling’ His ‘Flock’. This is the ‘Counsel’ of God!

Remember, Timothy II has not shunned declaring unto you all the ‘Counsel’ of God. Amen!

Acts 20:27
27 For I have not shunned (withheld, cowered or drawn back) to declare unto you all the counsel (1012) of God.

7. TEAM-WORK:
‘Team-Work’ is one of the most important qualities that a Church Staff should possess. A Church Staff that displays ‘Team-Work’ or the ability to ‘Work-Together’ provides an environment that displays true love, harmony, and unity to the whole Church. I was once told by a young Assistant “Pastor” who was an outstanding Basketball player in High School, that he was surprised that there were so many ‘Christian Leaders’ who did not understand the true concept of what ‘Team-Work’ was all about because they had never played on a ‘Team’ Sport. Because of this I am including a general meaning of what is meant by ‘Team-Work’.

a. Team-Work:
‘Team-Work’ consists of a group of individuals coming together as one in order to function at their maximum potential to further the goals of the ‘Team’. In order to do this, each member must sacrifice his/her individuality and submit to the ‘Team’ concept. This includes such things as physical, mental, emotional, educational, financial, family, and cultural differences. Also, each member must play the position that the Coach has called them to play and not be jealous of those in other positions. Neither should any member feel superior over others who may be weaker or lack in ability, nor any member feel inferior because of others position or ability.
In ‘Team-Work’ - the Team comes first!

The Dictionary states that ‘Team-Work’ is:

- A work done by several associates with each doing a part but all subordinating personal prominence to the efficiency of the whole.

The following are Scriptures that relate to ‘Team-Work’ for the Church:

**1 Cor 12:12-14**

12 For as the body is one, and hath many members, and all the members of that one body, being many, are one body: so also is Christ.
13 For by one Spirit are we all baptized (immersed, submerged, fully wet) into one body, whether we be Jews or Gentiles, whether we be bond or free; and have been all made to drink into one Spirit.
14 For the body is not one member, but many.

**1 Cor 12:18**

18 But now hath God set the members every one of them in the body, as it hath pleased him.

**1 Cor 12:25-27**

25 That there should be no schism (split, gap or division) in the body; but that the members should have the same care one for another.
26 And whether one member suffer (experiences pain), all the members suffer with (experiences pain jointly) it; or one member be honoured (esteemed or magnified), all the members rejoice (congratulate) with it.
27 Now ye are the body of Christ, and members in particular.

b. Work-Together:

It is important that all ‘Leaders’ in your Church must begin to ‘Work-Together’ because Jesus is Coming Soon, and He is coming for a Church that is without spot, wrinkle or blemish. (Ephesians 5:27)

The Dictionary states that ‘Work’ is:

- An activity in which one exerts strength or faculties to do or perform something.
- Sustained physical or mental effort to overcome obstacles and achieve an objective or result.
- The labor, task, or duty that is one’s accustomed means of livelihood.
- A specific task, duty, function, or assignment often being a part or phase of some larger activity.

The Dictionary states that ‘Together’ is:

- In or into one place, mass, collection, or group.
- In a body as a group.
- In or into contact (as connection, collision, or union).
- In or into association or relationship by combined action.
- In or into agreement or harmony.
- In or into a unified or coherent structure or an integrated whole with each other or as a unit.

The following are Scriptures that relate to ‘Work-Together’ for the Church:

**1 Cor 1:10-13**
10 Now I beseech (call for) you, brethren, by the name of our Lord Jesus Christ, that ye all speak (relate in words) the same thing, and that there be no divisions (splits, gaps or schisms) among you; but that ye be perfectly joined together in the same mind and in the same judgment (opinion, counsel, advice, purpose and/or will).

11 For it hath been declared unto me of you, my brethren, by them which are of the house of Chloe, that there are contentions (quarrels, wrangling, debate, strife, and variance) among you.

12 Now this I say, that every one of you saith, I am of Paul; and I of Apollos; and I of Cephas; and I of Christ.

13 Is Christ divided? was Paul crucified for you? or were ye baptized in the name of Paul?

1 Cor 3:9

9 For we are labourers together (companions in labor) with God: ye are God's husbandry (field, cultivation), ye are God's building (structure, architecture).

I learned a long time ago while in the United States Marine Corps, a great motto for the term ‘Work-Together’ which in Chinese is “Gung Ho”.

The Dictionary states that ‘Gung Ho’ is:

- A motto (interpreted as meaning ‘work together’) adopted by World War II United States Marines, from the Chinese.

(For more important information about ‘Working-Together’, read the Tract “Gung-Ho” written by Timothy II)

c. Unity:
‘Unity’ is Oneness, and when Church Leaders come together and dwell together as One in ‘Unity’, it is a good and pleasant thing. ‘Unity’ causes everyone to share all things.

The Dictionary states that ‘Unity’ is:

- The quality or state of not being multiple; oneness.
- A condition of harmony; accord.
- Continuity without deviation or change (as in purpose or action).
- The quality or state of being made one; unification.
- A totality of related parts.
- An entity that is a complex or systematic whole.

‘Unity’ in Hebrew is:

OT: 1571 gam (gam); by contraction from an unused root meaning to gather; properly, assemblage; used only adverbially also, even, yea, though; often repeated as correl. both ... and:
KJV - again, alike, also, (so much) as (soon), both (so). .. and but, either ... or, even, for all, (in) likewise (manner), moreover, nay.

‘Unity’ in Greek is:

NT: 1775 henotes (hen-ot-ace’); from NT:1520; oneness, i.e. (figuratively) unanimity:
KJV - unity.
Once you have established ‘Unity’ in your Church, notice how beautiful and delightful it is to dwell with one another United alike in ‘Unity’!

Ps 133:1

1 Behold, how good (beautiful) and how pleasant (delightful) it is for brethren to dwell together (united, alike) in unity!

When Church Leaders are ‘Filled’ with the Holy Ghost, it helps bring them together in ‘Unity’.

To be ‘Filled’ in the Greek is to be ‘imbued’:

- To be ‘imbued’ - means to permeate or influence. It also implies the introduction of a quality that fills and permeates the whole being.
- To be ‘imbued’ also means to ‘infuse’.
- To ‘infuse’ - means to cause to be permeated with something (such as a principle or quality) that alters usually for the better. It also implies a pouring in of something that gives new life or significance.

Acts 4:31-32

31 And when they had prayed, the place was shaken where they were assembled together; and they were all filled (imbued) with the Holy Ghost, and they spake the word of God with boldness (with all outspokenness, frankness, bluntness, assurance, confidence, freely, openly and plainly).
32 And the multitude of them that believed (to have faith in, upon, or with respect to, a person or thing; to entrust especially one's spiritual well-being to Christ; and to commit to that trust) were of one heart and of one soul (mind): neither said any of them that ought (any) of the things which he possessed was his own; but they had all things common (shared by all).

It is important that as ‘Church Leaders’ you should walk (live) worthy of the Calling that Jesus Christ has given you.

Eph 4:1-3

1 I therefore, the prisoner of the Lord, beseech (exhort) you that ye walk (live) worthy of the vocation wherewith ye are called.

To walk worthy is to do so with all humbleness of mind and patience and fortitude bearing with each other in Love.

2 With all lowliness (humbleness of mind) and meekness, with longsuffering (patience and ‘fortitude’ - which is strength of mind that enables a person to encounter danger or bear pain or adversity with courage), forbearing (bearing with) one another in love;

You must be diligent to keep the ‘Unity’ (Oneness) that the Holy Spirit imparts within you, uniting you in the bond of peace.

3 Endeavouring (being diligent) to keep the unity (oneness) of the Spirit in the bond (uniting principle) of peace.
You must persevere in one Spirit with one Mind laboring **together** for the Faith of the Gospel.

**Phil 1:27**
27 … *that ye stand fast* (persevere) **in one spirit, with one mind striving together** (seeking jointly together or laboring with) **for the faith of the gospel**:

d. **Loyalty:**
‘Loyalty’ is one of the most important qualities that members of a ‘Staff’ can/and should possess.
It is extra important that all ‘Staff’ members are ‘Loyal’ to you the “Pastor”. If they are not, it would behoove you to get rid of them, and the sooner the better!

‘Loyalty’ and ‘Loyal’ in the Dictionary is:
- ‘Loyalty’ is the quality or state or an instance of being ‘Loyal’.
- ‘Loyal’ means unswerving in allegiance such as being **faithful** in allegiance to one's lawful sovereign or government.
- ‘Loyal’ means to be **faithful** to a private person to whom fidelity is due.
- ‘Loyal’ also means to be **faithful** to a cause, ideal, custom, institution, or product.
- ‘Loyal’ also means firm in adherence to promises or in observance of duty.

The following are some other words that are synonymous with ‘Loyalty’:
- ‘Allegiance’ which is devotion or loyalty to a person, group, or cause.
- ‘Faithful’ which means full of faith and steadfast in affection or allegiance.
- ‘Fidelity’ which is the quality or state of being faithful to something to which one is bound by pledge or duty. It also implies strict and continuing faithfulness to an obligation, trust, or duty.
- ‘Devotion’ which is the act of devoting of time and energy and/or the fact or state of being ardently dedicated and loyal.
- ‘Dedicated’ which means devoted to a cause, ideal, or purpose.
- ‘Obedience’ which is an act or instance of obeying and/or the quality or state of being obedient; also a sphere of jurisdiction especially an ecclesiastical or sometimes secular dominion.

The following are some of the meanings of these words in the Greek and some of the Scriptures that relate to these meanings.

‘Faithful’:
**NT:4103 pistos** (pis-tos'); from NT:3982; objectively, **trustworthy**; subjectively, **trustful**:
KJV - believe (-ing, -r), faithful (-ly), sure, true.

**Matt 24:45**
45 *Who then is a faithful* (4103) **and wise** (thoughtful, discreet or ‘sagacious’ - which is keen in sense perception and/or keen and farsighted penetration and judgment) **servant, whom his lord hath made ruler over his household, to give them meat** (food) **in due season** (at the proper time)?

‘Obedience’
**NT:5293 hupotasso** (hoop-ot-as'-so); from NT:5259 and NT:5021; **to subordinate**; reflexively, **to obey**:
KJV - be under obedience (obedient), put under, subdue unto, (be, make) subject (to, unto), be
(put) in subjection (to, under), submisstelf unto.

**Titus 2:9**
9 Exhort servants (‘doulos’) **to be obedient** (5293) **unto their own masters, and to please them well in all things; not answering again** (disputing, refusing, contradicting, denying or speaking against);

‘Fidelity’
NT:4102 pistis (pis'-tis); from NT:3982; persuasion, i.e. credence; **moral conviction** (of religious truth, or the truthfulness of God or a religious teacher), especially reliance upon Christ for salvation; abstractly, **constancy in such profession**; by extension, the system of religious (Gospel) truth itself: KJV - assurance, belief, believe, faith, fidelity.

**Titus 2:10**
10 **Not purloining** (keeping back, or to appropriate wrongfully and often by a breach of trust; or ‘clandestinely’ - which is marked by, held in, or conducted with secrecy), **but shewing all good fidelity** (4102); **that they may adorn** (put in proper order) **the doctrine of God our Saviour in all things**.

Another great motto I learned while in the United States Marine Corps, is a Latin term “Semper Fi”, which stands for the term ‘Always Faithful’.

The Dictionary states that “Semper Fi” stands for:
- “Semper Fidelis” which is Latin for ‘Always Faithful’ the motto of the United States Marine Corps.

‘Obey’
NT:5219 hupakouo (hoop-ak-oo'-o); from NT:5259 and NT:191; **to hear under** (as a subordinate), i.e. **to listen attentively**; by implication, **to heed or conform to a command or authority**: KJV - hearken, be obedient to, obey.

NT:3982 peitho (pi'-tho); a primary verb; to convince (by argument, true or false); by analogy, to pacify or conciliate (by other fair means); reflexively or passively, **to assent (to evidence or authority), to rely (by inward certainty)**: KJV - agree, assure, believe, have confidence, be (wax) confident, make friend, obey, persuade, trust, yield.

**Col 3:22**
22 **Servants** (‘doulos’), **obey** (5219) **in all things your masters according to the flesh; not with eyeservice, as menpleasers; but in singleness of heart, fearing God**.

**Heb 13:17**
17 **Obey** (3982) **them that have the rule** (command with official authority) **over you, and submit yourselves**;

In the conclusion of this section on ‘Loyalty’, I would like to state that having been a former Head Football Coach and having a Ministry Team for many years now, I know the importance of having a ‘Loyal’ Staff. As I have found out through experience, sometimes when a new applicant wants to join your Staff they do not know what ‘Loyalty’ actually means. It is a good idea for you as the “Pastor” to explain to them what ‘Loyalty’ means, and that you require ‘Loyalty’ from all of your Staff members.
This should be done before hiring or appointing that person. Many times new Staff members do not realize that if they ever expect to become a Senior “Pastor”, they would expect their Staff to also be ‘Loyal’. Therefore, even if they do not agree with all your thoughts, ideas and/or doctrine, they need to always remain ‘Loyal’ to you in order to keep a steady and well ordered Staff.

**e. Doctrine:**
This section concerns the importance of having your Staff agree with you the “Pastor” on the main principles of your Church ‘Doctrine’. Of course not everyone will always agree on everything, however, when you interview someone for a position on your Staff, the person you hire must be willing to submit to whatever principles of Church ‘Doctrine’ that your Church believes in.

- **Doctrine** - is something that is taught; a principle or position or the body of principles in a branch of knowledge or system of belief.

Without going into any actual Christian and/or Church ‘Doctrine’, the following are some Scriptures that if you will follow them, may help you to avoid confusion, division and strife in your Staff as well as in your ‘Flock’.

Here Paul states to Timothy and Titus to command others that they teach no other ‘Doctrine’ other than what they have received from him and not to pay attention to ‘fables’ or ‘genealogies’.

- **Fables** - are fictitious narratives or statements, or legendary stories of supernatural happenings.
- **Genealogies** - are accounts of the descent of a person, family, or group from an ancestor or from older forms; or the study of family pedigrees; or accounts of the origin and historical development of something.

**1 Tim 1:3-7  Titus 1:14  Titus 2:1  Titus 3:9**
3 As I besought (called for) thee to abide still at Ephesus, when I went into Macedonia, that thou mightest charge (declare or command) some that they teach no other doctrine,
4 Neither give heed (pay attention) to fables (tales, fiction or myths) and endless genealogies (tracing by generations), which minister questions (disputes), rather than godly edifying (administration or ‘dispensation’ - which is a general state or ordering of things) which is in faith: so do.

Paul then states that the end of the commandment is Love which some have deviated from and thereby they have become teachers of the Law.

5 Now the end of the commandment is charity (‘agape’ - love) out of a pure heart, and of a good conscience, and of faith unfeigned (that is sincere or without hypocrisy):
6 From which some having swerved (erred or deviated from the truth) have turned aside (turned away) unto vain jangling (random talk or babble);
7 Desiring to be teachers of the law; understanding neither what they say, nor whereof they affirm (confirm thoroughly by words or ‘asseverate’ - which is to affirm or declare positively or earnestly).

Here Paul reminds Timothy to fight a good warfare and to hold fast the Faith and a good conscience.
1 Tim 1:18
18 This charge (mandate or command) I commit unto thee, son Timothy, according to the prophecies which went before on thee, that thou by them mightest war a good warfare:

1 Tim 1:19
19 Holding faith ('credence' - which is mental acceptance as true or real; moral conviction (of religious truth, or the truthfulness of God or a religious teacher), especially reliance upon Christ for Salvation; constancy in such profession; by extension, the system of religious (Gospel) truth itself; assurance, belief, believe, fidelity), and a good conscience; which some having put away concerning faith have made (or suffered) shipwreck:

Paul also tells Timothy to refuse wicked and silly Fables and to train himself rather to Godliness.

1 Tim 4:7
7 But refuse profane (wicked) and old wives' (silly) fables (tales, fiction or myths), and exercise (train) thyself rather unto godliness (Holiness).

Paul then states if any teach other than the ‘Doctrine’ according to Godliness, he is proud knowing nothing, and he will cause disputes and strife about words which will cause envy, strife, railings and evil suspicions.

1 Tim 6:3-4
3 If any man teach otherwise (other doctrine or instruct differently), and consent not to wholesome (uncorrupt or true in doctrine) words, even the words of our Lord Jesus Christ, and to the doctrine which is according to godliness (Holiness);
4 He is proud (enveloped with smoke, inflated with self-conceit, high minded and lifted up with pride), knowing nothing, but doting (hankering or harping upon) about questions (disputes) and strifes of words (disputation of trifles), whereof cometh envy (ill will, jealousy), strife (quarrels, wrangling, contention, debate, variance), railings (vilifications against God, blasphemy, evil speaking), evil surmising (suspicions),

Paul continues to encourage Timothy to keep that which is committed to his trust and to avoid empty and fruitless discussions and oppositions of Science which have caused some to error concerning the Faith.

1 Tim 6:20-21
20 O Timothy, keep (watch, be on guard, preserve) that which is committed to thy trust, avoiding profane (wicked) and vain babblings (empty sounding and fruitless discussion), and oppositions (conflict of theories) of science (such knowledge or such a system of knowledge concerned with the physical world and its phenomena) falsely so called (untruly named):
21 Which some professing (engaged in or ‘asserting’ - which is to state or declare positively and often forcefully or aggressively) have erred (deviated from the truth) concerning the faith. Grace be with thee. Amen.

Paul tells Timothy to remind others not to strive about words which are of no profit and which might overthrow those that hear and to avoid profane speech and fruitless discussions which might increase unto more Un-Godliness.
2 Tim 2:14
14 Of these things put them in remembrance (remind quietly), charging them before the Lord that they strive not about words (to be disputatious on trifles) to no profit, but to the subverting (overturning or overthrowing) of the hearers.

2 Tim 2:16
16 But shun (avoid) profane (wicked) and vain babblings (empty sounding and fruitless discussion): for they will increase unto more ungodliness.

He reminds Timothy to also avoid foolish and unlearned questions that bring forth strife, but as a ‘Doulos’ Servant, be gentle to all people, ready to teach and patient.

2 Tim 2:23-24
23 But foolish (dull, heedless, blockhead and/or absurd) and unlearned (uninstructed and/or stupid) questions avoid, knowing that they do gender (bring forth) strifes (battles, controversy and fighting).
24 And the servant (‘doulos’) of the Lord must not strive (war, quarrel, dispute or fight); but be gentle (mild, kind and ‘affable’ - which means to be pleasant and at ease in talking to others and characterized by ease and friendliness) unto all men, apt (ready) to teach, patient (enduring of ill and ‘forbearing’ - which means to hold oneself back, especially with an effort),

Paul says to watch those people that are ever learning but never able to recognize the Truth for they have corrupt minds and will always resist the Truth.

2 Tim 3:7-8
7 Ever (always) learning, and never able to come to the knowledge (recognition, full discernment or acknowledgement) of the truth.
8 Now as Jannes and Jambres withstood (opposed) Moses, so do these also resist (oppose) the truth: men of corrupt minds, reprobate (unapproved, rejected, worthless, castaways) concerning the faith.

Here Paul states that because you know my ‘Doctrine’, manner of life, purpose, Faith, longsuffering, Love and patience; continue in all things that you have learned and are assured of, knowing who you have learned them from.

2 Tim 3:10
10 But thou hast fully known my doctrine, manner of life (mode of living), purpose, faith (‘credence’ - which is mental acceptance as true or real; moral conviction (of religious truth, or the truthfulness of God or a religious teacher), especially reliance upon Christ for Salvation; constancy in such profession; by extension, the system of religious (Gospel) truth itself; assurance, belief, believe, fidelity), longsuffering (‘forbearance’ - which is a refraining from the enforcement of something (as a debt, right, or obligation) that is due; and/or ‘fortitude’ - which is strength of mind that enables a person to encounter danger or bear pain or adversity with courage), charity (‘agape’ - love), patience (cheerful or hopeful endurance and/or constancy):

2 Tim 3:14
14 But continue thou in the things which thou hast learned and hast been assured of, knowing of whom thou hast learned them:
B. CHOOSING CHURCH LEADERS:
As a “Pastor”, when choosing ‘Church Leaders’ for your Staff, it is important to first Consult God the Holy Spirit through ‘prayer and fasting’, and then seek further Counsel from those that you trust in Ministry. (Acts 14:23  Proverbs 15:22)
“Pastors” are usually very anxious to put together a ‘Staff’ if that are new or very young, or if their Church has been newly formed. Because of this they may choose the first people that come along that look good to them and seem to be experienced. Unfortunately, they may not realize that many times the Devil will try to infiltrate and establish ‘False Leaders’ within these new beginnings. These ‘False Leaders’ usually seem to be an answer to prayer because they look great, have good knowledge of the Scriptures, are friendly, especially to the ‘Leadership’, and they tithe well!
However, eventually these ‘False Leaders’ will manifest their true purpose in coming to your Church, and that purpose is to cause division and strife, and to eventually try to destroy you personally and your Church. As a new or young “Pastor” the answer to this problem is to never move too quickly in selecting your ‘Leaders’, especially with new people that come to your Church. As the Bible states, some of these people (human beings) may have crept into your Church unawares and have crept in alongside your ‘Flock’!

Jude 4
4 For there are certain men (human beings) crept in unawares (or settled in alongside or ‘lodged stealthily’ - which means slow, deliberate, and secret in action or character, and intended to escape observation), who were before of old ordained to this condemnation, ungodly men (wicked or ‘impious’ - which means lacking in reverence or proper respect for God), turning the grace of our God into lasciviousness (which is ‘licentiousness’ - which means lacking legal or moral restraints and marked by a disregard for strict rules of correctness; especially disregarding sexual restraints), and denying the only Lord God, and our Lord Jesus Christ.

The problem with not recognizing these ‘False Leaders’ right away is that they will eventually become ‘False Teachers’ and will bring in damnable heresies.

2 Peter 2:1-3
1 But there were false prophets also among the people, even as there shall be false teachers (which means propagators of erroneous Christian Doctrine, or ‘spurious teachers’ - which means of illegitimate birth or of falsified or erroneously attributed origin; also of a deceitful nature or quality which means outwardly similar or corresponding to something without having its genuine qualities) among you, who privily shall bring in (secretly bring in, or ‘surreptitiously’ - which means slow, deliberate, and secret in action or character) damnable (‘apoleia’ - which is ruin or loss physical, Spiritual and/or eternal) heresies (‘disunion’ - which is the termination of union; separation, disunity), even denying the Lord that bought them, and bring upon themselves swift destruction.

One of the biggest problems is the longer it takes for you to recognize and to get rid of these ‘False Leaders’ and ‘False Teachers’, the more of your ‘Flock’ you will lose that will follow them!

2 And many shall follow their pernicious (filthy, lasciviousness, wantonness) ways; by reason of whom the way of truth shall be evil spoken of.
3 And through covetousness (greediness, fraudulency, and/or extortion) shall they with feigned (artificial, fictitious and/or false) words make merchandise (buy and sell) of you: whose judgment now of a long time lingereth not, and their damnation slumbereth not.

VII. PRACTICAL CHURCH MATTERS:
The following Section is made up of ‘Practical Church Matters’ that the Holy Spirit has prompted Timothy II to include in this “Book”. The purpose is to share some of the following ‘Church Matters’ in a ‘Practical Way’ as related to the Scriptures and today’s cultures, situations and realities.

A. BUILDING A CHURCH:
When considering on ‘Building a Church’ there are many important points to consider. First of all, what does it mean to ‘Build’?

To ‘Build’ in the Dictionary is:
- To form by ordering and uniting materials by gradual means into a composite whole.
- To cause to be constructed.
- To develop according to a systematic plan, by a definite process, or on a particular base.

To ‘Build’ in Hebrew is:

OT:1129 banah (baw-naw’); a primitive root; to build (literally and figuratively):
KJV - (begin to) build (-er), obtain children, make, repair, set (up), surely.

To ‘Build’ in Aramaic is:

OT:1124 bena’ (Aramaic) (ben-aw’); or benah (Aramaic) (ben-aw’); corresponding to OT:1129; to build:
KJV - build, make.

To ‘Build’ in Greek is:

NT:3618 oikodomeo (oy-kod-om-eh’-o); from the same as NT:3619; to be a house-builder, i.e. construct or (figuratively) confirm:
KJV - (be in) build (-er, -ing, up), edify, embolden.
NT:2680 kataskeuazo (kat-ask-yoo-ad'-zo); from NT:2596 and a derivative of NT:4632; to prepare thoroughly (properly, by external equipment; whereas NT:2090 refers rather to internal fitness); by implication, to construct, create:
KJV - build, make, ordain, prepare.

When considering on ‘Building a Church’, it is important to remember that the Church (or Temple) of God is actually made up of the people. Therefore, before deciding to ‘Build’ a Church Building, you need to start off by ‘Building’ a ‘Flock’.

1 Cor 3:16
16 Know ye not that ye are the temple (denotes the central Sanctuary of the Temple itself) of God, and that the Spirit of God dwelleth (co-habits, resides) in you?

Heb 3:6
6 But Christ as a son over his own house (Temple); whose house (Temple) are we, if we hold fast (keep, possess, retain) the confidence and the rejoicing of the hope firm unto the end.

Before you begin to ‘Build’ your own Church, it is important to complete your work ‘outside’ first. This means that you must first raise up a ‘Flock’ ‘outside’, before you actually start to ‘Build a Church’ ‘inside’.

I remember when Preaching on a Saturday in a small village in the Philippines, a group of about 100 villagers showed up. After most of them received Jesus as their Lord and Savior, they wanted to start a Church. Since the next day was Sunday they asked if we could hold a Church Service there, which I was happy to do. Over 100 people showed up again the next day all cleaned and dressed up. They brought their own chairs and benches from their homes and Nipa-Huts, and we held Church ‘outdoors’ in the dirt. This Church has since grown up and still exists today in a ‘Building’!

Prov 24:27
27 Prepare (establish) thy work (ministry) without (outside, outdoors, or abroad), and make it fit (ready to become) for thyself in the field (to spread out); and afterwards (after that) build thine house (Temple).

After you become a “Pastor”, you will most likely feel Called to ‘Build’ your own ‘Church Building’. I have been in parts of Africa where some ‘Church Buildings’ are actually made out of sticks, clay and/or dung. I have even used a pulpit which was molded out of the same materials. Actually it doesn’t matter to God what you use to make the ‘Church Building’, the important point is that although you as a man may ‘Build’ the physical part of the House, it is God that ‘Builds’ all things.

Heb 3:4
4 For every house (Temple) is builded (2680 - constructed or built) by some man (or any person); but he that build (2680 - constructs and builds) all things is God.

Remember, it is the Lord that must be the ‘Builder of the Church’ or else your labor will be in vain.

1 Sam 2:35
35 And I will raise me up a faithful (of long continuance, steadfast, sure, surely, trusty, verified) priest, that shall do according to that which is in mine heart and in my mind: and I will build (1129) him a sure house (Temple); and he shall walk before mine anointed (The Messiah) forever.

Ps 127:1
1 Except (unless) the LORD build (1129) the house (Temple), they labour in vain that build (1129) it;…

Here an Angel of the Lord spoke to Zechariah about a ‘Word of the Lord’ for Zerubbabel. He told him the Church will not be ‘Built’ by men’s might nor by men’s power, but by the Holy Spirit of God.

Zech 4:5-10
5 Then the angel (‘malak’ - a messenger specifically of God) that talked with me answered and said
unto me, Knowest thou not what these be? And I said, No, my lord.

6 Then he answered and spake unto me, saying, This is the word of the LORD unto Zerubbabel, saying, Not by might (men’s force, resources, wealth, band of men, goods or strength), nor by power (men’s vigor, capacity, means, ability or substance), but by my spirit, saith the LORD of hosts.

Although difficulties may rise up like a great mountain when starting to ‘Build a Church’; that mountain will become as a level plain and made straight if you let the Lord ‘Build’ the Church (House). Just like Zerubbabel, when you begin to build your Church it will be done with shouting’s of great joy and crying.

7 Who art thou, O great mountain? before Zerubbabel thou shalt become a plain (level, made straight): and he shall bring forth the headstone (Plummet) thereof with shoutings (a loud clamor and crying), crying, Grace, grace (and favor) unto it.

If you have laid the foundation of the ‘Building’ of your Church properly, with Jesus Christ being the Chief Cornerstone; then God will allow your hands to finish it, and you will know that the Lord of Hosts has sent this message to you! (Isaiah 28:16 Ephesians 2:20)

8 Moreover the word (advice and counsel) of the LORD came unto me, saying,

9 The hands of Zerubbabel have laid the foundation of this house (Temple); his hands shall also finish it; and thou shalt know that the LORD of hosts hath sent me unto you.

Even though you may have started out by doing small things in your early work for the Lord, do not despise those days, but count them as a Blessing. If you remain Faithful, eventually you will begin to rejoice when you see the ‘Plummet’ or ‘Plumb Line’ appear in your hands ready to start the ‘Building’ of your Church.

10 For who hath despised (disrespected) the day of small (diminutive, or literally in quantity, size or number, and/or in age or importance) things? for they shall rejoice, and shall see the plummet in the hand of Zerubbabel…

A ‘Plummet’ or ‘Plumb Line’ in the Dictionary is:

- A line (as of cord) that has at one end a weight (as a ‘Plumb bob’) and is used especially to determine verticality.
- A line directed to the center of gravity of the earth, a vertical line.
- A ‘Plumb’ is a lead weight attached to a line and used to indicate a vertical direction.
- ‘Out of Plumb’ or ‘off Plumb’ means out of vertical or true.

Here it states that when the ‘Plummet’ was in Zerubbabel’s hands, it was with those ‘Seven’. The ‘Seven’ represents the ‘Seven Attributes’ of God the Holy Spirit, which are the “Seven Spirits of God”. The “Seven Spirits of God” are also the ‘eyes of the Lord’ that run throughout the whole earth! (2 Chronicles 16:9 Revelation 1:4 3:1 4:5 5:6)

(Read “The Seven Spirits of God” written by Timothy II)
The meaning of this part of ‘Verse 10’ is that if you start to ‘Build’ your Church correctly, when the ‘Plummet’ is in your hands, God the Holy Spirit will join with you in all that you do and He will guide the ‘Plumb Line’ to keep it vertical and true! (Isaiah 28:17)

10 … with those seven; they are the eyes of the LORD, which run to and fro through the whole earth.

On our own we often fail, but with God’s strength we can do all things that He leads us to do. Just as it was in the early Church, when the Foundation of a New Church is laid correctly and the decrees of the “Apostles” and “Elders” are established, then the Church will be established in the Faith and will increase in number daily.

Acts 16:4-5
4 And as they (Paul & Timothy) went through the cities, they delivered (entrusted, committed) them the decrees (the ecclesiastical decrees which are of or relating to a Church, especially as an established institution and suitable for use in a Church) for to keep, that were ordained of the apostles and elders which were at Jerusalem.
5 And so were the churches established in the faith, and increased (super-abounded in quantity and quality) in number daily (beyond measure).

Here Paul states that although he as an “Apostle” laid the Spiritual Foundation of the Church as a wise master builder, another will Physically and Spiritually build on that Foundation. Then he warns every man thereafter how he builds thereon, because the only Foundation that is laid - must be that of Jesus Christ! This is a warning to those “Pastors” that take over a Church that has already been started or established to be sure to maintain Christ as the Foundation of that Church!

1 Cor 3:10-11
10 According to the grace of God which is given unto me, as a wise masterbuilder (a chief constructor or architect), I have laid the foundation, and another buildeth (2026) thereon. But let every man take heed (beware) how he buildeth (2026) thereupon.
11 For other foundation can no man lay than that is laid, which is Jesus Christ.

B. CHURCH GROWTH:
The motto for today’s Churches in America seems to be “Bigger is Better”! Many “Pastors” continually attend Church Growth Seminars, looking for formulas and ways to grow their Church. The problem with this is that most of the ways they use for growing the Church are ‘Man’s Ways’ and not necessarily ‘God’s Ways’!

Notice here in the following Scriptures how God grew the Church:

- All those that believed were together.
- They had all things in common.
- They shared with all men as every man had need, even if they had to sell their possessions and goods to do it.
- They continued earnestly and diligently day by day with one accord in the Church.
- They broke bread with each other house to house.
- They ate their food with gladness and with singleness of heart.
• They praised God and had favor with all the people.
• Then the Lord added to the Church such as should be Saved.

Acts 2:44-47
44 And all that believed (‘pisteuo’ - especially one's spiritual well-being to Christ) were together, and had all things common (shared by all);
45 And sold their possessions (acquirements, estates) and goods (property, wealth, substance), and parted them to all men, as every man had need.
46 And they, continuing (to be earnest towards, constantly diligent, and to adhere closely to) daily (day by day) with one accord in the temple, and breaking bread from house to house, did eat their meat (food) with gladness (exceeding joy) and singleness of heart.
47 Praising God, and having favour (especially the Divine influence upon the heart) with all the people. And the Lord added to the church daily (day by day) such as should be saved (delivered, protected, healed, preserved and/or made whole).

*Notice that the Lord added to the Church the people such as should be Saved. This means that these people were ‘New Believers’ that the Lord added to the Church and not necessarily people from other Churches.

Another method that some “Pastors” use for growing their Churches is by watering down the Gospel of Jesus Christ. In other words they are adding such things as man’s philosophy, psychology, thoughts and traditions; thereby letting the people hear what they want to hear and not what God may want them to hear. (Ezekiel 33:31-32)

Here Paul warns:

Col 2:6-8
6 As ye have therefore received (and assumed an Office by) Christ Jesus the Lord, so walk ye (be occupied with, or follow as a companion or ‘votary’ - which is a sworn adherent, a devoted admirer, a devout or zealous worshipper and a staunch believer or advocate) in him:
7 Rooted (become stable) and built up in him, and stablished (established, confirmed and ‘stabilitated’ - which means poised and steady) in the faith, as ye have been taught, abounding therein with thanksgiving.
8 Beware lest any man spoil (to lead away or seduce) you through philosophy (which in the Greek means fond of wise things, a philosopher, or specifically Jewish ‘sophistry’ - which is subtly deceptive reasoning or argumentation) and vain (empty) deceit (delusion), after the tradition of men, after the rudiments (elements or principles) of the world, and not after Christ.

The Lord will add more to the Church when “Pastors” reduce their commitments that are not related to their role as a “Shepherd”, and when they learn to concentrate on Teaching and Preaching the ‘Word of God’.

Acts 6:2
2 Then the twelve (Apostles of the Lamb) called the multitude of the disciples unto them, and said, It is not reason (fit or pleasing) that we should leave the word of God, and serve tables.
7 And the word of God increased; and the number of the disciples multiplied in Jerusalem greatly; and a great company of the priests (2409) were obedient to the faith.

Here the Church in Jerusalem sent forth Barnabas to Antioch (who was later Called as an “Apostle” - Acts 13:2 14:14). There he Preached the Gospel and exhorted and encouraged those in the early Church that they should cleave to the Lord with purpose of heart.

Thus I believe the Lord would encourage you “Pastors” to also send out those in your Church that are Called by the Lord in the “Five-Fold Ministry”.

Acts 11:22-24
22 Then tidings of these things came unto the ears of the church which was in Jerusalem: and they sent forth (sent away or sent out on a mission) Barnabas, that he should go as far as Antioch.
23 Who, when he came, and had seen the grace of God, was glad, and exhorted (invoked, implored, called for, entreated) them all, that with purpose of heart they would cleave unto (to stay further, remain in place, to adhere to, to persevere in, and to abide with) the Lord.

It is a bonus if those in the “Five-Fold Ministry” are ‘Filled’ with the Holy Ghost and of Faith. If they are, the Lord will use them to help add many people to your Church.

24 For he was a good man, and full (covered over, or ‘replete’ - which is fully or abundantly provided or filled) of the Holy Ghost and of faith: and much people was added unto the Lord.

The Lord will also add to your Church if you as the “Pastor” will Walk in the “Fear of the Lord” (which is to hate evil and to depart from it) and in the comfort of the Holy Ghost. (Psalms 97:10 Proverbs 8:13 3:7 16:6)

Acts 9:31
31 Then had the churches rest throughout all Judaea and Galilee and Samaria, and were edified (built up, confirmed and 'emboldened’ - which means to instill with boldness and courage); and walking in the fear of the Lord, and in the comfort (consolation and exhortation) of the Holy Ghost, were multiplied.

C. SPECIAL CHURCH SERVICES:
Many Churches have different types of ‘Special Church Services’. For example most Churches have Special Services for Christmas to celebrate the Birth of Jesus Christ. They also have ‘Special Church Services’ for Easter to celebrate Christ’s Resurrection. However, only some Churches regularly hold ‘Special Church Services’ for ‘Communion’ and/or ‘Altar Calls’ for Salvation.

If you are not doing so, I believe God the Holy Spirit would encourage you to add these two important areas of God's Plan to your Church Services!

1. ALTAR CALLS:
Since the Lord uses “Pastors” as His vessels to Lead people to Salvation within the Church, your Church won’t grow properly with ‘New Believers’ if you “Pastors” do not have ‘Altar Calls’ on a regular basis. One of the problems that can result from not having ‘Altar Calls’ is that if the Church is growing without ‘New Believers’, then it is obvious that the growth is made up of people coming from other Churches. This is often called ‘stealing another’s sheep’ and this behavior can lead to discord and
jealousy between the Churches.

The Dictionary states that an ‘Altar Call’ is:
- An appeal by an Evangelist to worshipers to come forward to signify their decision to commit their lives to Christ.

There are various ways, methods and times to have an ‘Altar Call’. I personally believe it is best that the Senior “Pastor” lead the ‘Altar Calls’. Just remember that it is not you but the Holy Spirit in you that will ‘Anoint’ you and lead you to be Bold and to give the Call. (Isaiah 61:1-3  Acts 4:31  Romans 1:16)

2 Cor 6:2
(For he saith, I have heard thee in a time accepted, and in the day of salvation have I succoured (helped or aided) thee; behold, now is the accepted time; behold, now is the day of salvation.)

If you as the Senior “Pastor” do not feel comfortable leading the ‘Altar Call’ then try using another Leader to help you such as the young “Evangelists” within your Church. ‘Altar Calls’ will add to the building up of your Church Body as it is always exciting to see potential ‘New Believers’ come forward and receive the Lord.

2. COMMUNION:
‘Communion’ is a very important ‘Special Church Service’ that should be a part of every Church. This ‘Service’ was established by Jesus Christ Himself. Although He did not tell us how often we are to offer ‘Communion’, He did state that whenever we give it, do it in ‘Remembrance of Him’!

The Dictionary states that ‘Communion’ is:
- A Christian Sacrament in which consecrated bread and wine are consumed as memorials of Christ's death.
- Or as symbols for the realization of a Spiritual union between Christ and communicant or as the Body and Blood of Christ.
- The act of receiving Communion.
- The part of a Communion Service in which the Sacrament is received.

‘Communion’ in the Greek is:

NT:2842 koinonia (koy-nohn-ee'-ah); from NT:2844; partnership, i.e. (literally) participation, or (social) intercourse, or ‘pecuniary benefaction’ which is a charitable donation:
KJV - (to) communicate (-ation), communion, (contri-) distribution, fellowship.
NT:2844 koinonos (koy-no-nos'); from NT:2839; a sharer, i.e. associate:
KJV - companion, fellowship, partaker, partner.

According to the Bible, ‘Communion’ consists of the drinking of the ‘Cup of Blessing’ which represents the ‘Communion’ of the ‘Blood’ of Jesus Christ and the breaking and eating of the ‘Bread’ which represents the ‘Communion’ of the ‘Body’ of Jesus Christ.

1 Cor 10:16
The cup of blessing (reverential adoration) which we bless, is it not the communion (2482) of the blood (shed blood or atoning blood) of Christ? The bread which we break, is it not the communion (2842) of the body (whole) of Christ?

Here Jesus sets the example we are to follow in the taking of ‘Communion’.

Matt 26:26-28 Mark 14:22-24
26 And as they were eating, Jesus took bread, and blessed it, and brake it, and gave it to the disciples, and said, Take, eat; this is my body.
27 And he took the cup, and gave thanks, and gave it to them, saying, Drink ye all of it:
28 For this is my blood (shed blood or atoning blood) of the new testament (contract, covenant or ‘disposition’ - which means the final arrangement or settlement of the transfer to the care or possession of another), which is shed (poured forth or bestowed) for many for the remission of sins.

Jesus stated that when we take ‘Communion’ “this do in remembrance of me”. Thus when we take ‘Communion’, it is to be a reminder of the price that Jesus paid on the Cross for our Salvation.

Luke 22:19-20
19 And he took bread, and gave thanks, and brake it, and gave unto them, saying, This is my body which is given for you: this do in remembrance of me.
20 Likewise also the cup after supper, saying, This cup is the new testament (contract, covenant or ‘disposition’ - which means the final arrangement or settlement of the transfer to the care or possession of another) in my blood, which is shed for you.

1 Cor 11:23-25
23 … That the Lord Jesus the same night in which he was betrayed took bread:
24 And when he had given thanks, he brake it, and said, Take, eat: this is my body, which is broken for you: this do in remembrance of me.
25 After the same manner also he took the cup, when he had supped (after supper), saying, This cup is the new testament (contract, covenant or ‘disposition’ - which means the final arrangement or settlement of the transfer to the care or possession of another) in my blood: this do ye, as oft (often) as ye drink it, in remembrance of me.

Paul states here that when we participate in ‘Communion’ it proclaims the showing of Jesus’ death until He comes again.

1 Cor 11:26
26 For as often as (as many times as or whenever) ye eat this bread, and drink this cup, ye do shew (proclaim or declare) the Lord's death till he come.

The following Scriptures are warnings about how we are to take ‘Communion’.
Here it states that you cannot mix ‘Communion’ with any type of communion with demons!

1 Cor 10:21
21 Ye cannot drink the cup of the Lord, and the cup of devils (demons or gods): ye cannot be partakers (share or participate in, eat or drink) of the Lord's table, and of the table of devils (demons or gods).
When you come together for ‘Communion’, it should not be combined with the eating or drinking of a regular meal. This is because some may eat before the others leaving some hungry, and some may actually become drunken. This can bring disorder to the Church; therefore, it is better to eat and drink in your own houses.

1 Cor 11:20-22
20 When ye come together (assemble) therefore into one place, this is not to eat the Lord's supper.
21 For in eating every one taketh before other his own supper: and one is hungry, and another is drunken.
22 What? have ye not houses to eat and to drink in? or despise ye the church of God, and shame them that have not? What shall I say to you? shall I praise you in this? I praise you not.

The following warning is for those in the Church not to take ‘Communion’ ‘unworthily’. If you do you shall be guilty of the ‘Body and Blood of the Lord’.

1 Cor 11:27-34
27 Wherefore whosoever shall eat this bread, and drink this cup of the Lord, unworthily (irreverently or unfit), shall be guilty (liable to, the penalty of or subject to) of the body and blood of the Lord.

Therefore, it is important to give time for those in your Church to examine them-selves and get right with God before taking ‘Communion’.

28 But let a man examine (approve, discern or test) himself, and so let him eat of that bread, and drink of that cup.
29 For he that eateth and drinketh unworthily, eateth and drinketh damnation (condemned or judged) to himself, not discerning the Lord's body.

“Pastors” you need to take these warnings about ‘Communion’ very seriously as your ‘Flock’ can suffer illnesses and/or permanent damage to themselves, and the Lord will hold you responsible for it!

30 For this cause (by reason of this) many are weak (feeble, diseased, impotent) and sickly among you, and many sleep (are ‘reposed’ - which means to lie at rest or to lie dead).
31 For if we would judge ourselves, we should not be judged (tried, condemned, punished or damned).
32 But when we are judged, we are chastened (disciplined) of the Lord, that we should not be condemned (sentenced or damned) with the world.

In conclusion, when your ‘Flock’ comes together for ‘Communion’, if any hungry, let them eat at home so that they do not come under any condemnation.

33 Wherefore, my brethren, when ye come together (assemble) to eat, tarry (wait for) one for another.
34 And if any man hunger, let him eat at home; that ye come not together unto condemnation (judgment, damnation). And the rest will I set in order when I come.
VIII. PRACTICAL PERSONAL MATTERS:
The following Section is made up of ‘Practical Personal Matters’ for “Pastors”. It is designed for those that may need some help and/or insight into situations and realities of their daily lives. These are not in-depth studies of the following topics, but are inserted to hopefully stimulate your thinking about these important areas of your lives and to encourage you to further study these topics in the Bible.

A. THE PASTOR’S SALARY:
Just as it is stated in the Old Testament, “Pastors/Priests” should receive their ‘Salaries’ from the ‘first-fruits’ of the Congregation. This is basically considered a tenth part (10%) or more whether it comes from actual financial ‘Tithes’ or is paid for with food, animals, crops, etc.

Prov 3:9
9 Honour the LORD with thy substance (wealth, riches or by implication enough), and with the firstfruits (7225 - the first, first part or beginning) of all thine increase (income, produce, fruit, gain, or revenue):

In the Dictionary ‘first-fruits’ are:
- The earliest gathered fruits offered to God in acknowledgment of the gift of fruitfulness.
- The earliest products or results of an endeavor.

“First-fruits” in Hebrew is:

OT:7225 re'shiyth (ray-sheeth'); from the same as OT:7218; the first, in place, time, order or rank (specifically, a firstfruit):
KJV - beginning, chief (-est), first (-fruits, part, time), principal thing.
OT:1061 bikkuwr (bik-koor'); from OT:1069; the first-fruits of the crop:
KJV - first fruit (-ripe [figuratively]), hasty fruit.

“First-fruits” in Greek is:

NT:536 aparche (ap-ar-khay'); from a compound of NT:575 and NT:756; a beginning of sacrifice, i.e. the (Jewish) first-fruit (figuratively):
KJV - first-fruits.

When your Congregation offers their ‘first-fruits’ to you the “Pastor”, they will receive a Blessing that will rest and remain in their House. (Proverbs 3:33)

Ezek 44:30
30 And the first (7225) of all the firstfruits (1061) of all things, and every oblation (gift or offering) of all, of every sort of your oblations (gifts or offerings), shall be the priest's; ye shall also give unto the priest the first (7225) of your dough (meal), that he may cause the blessing to rest (remain) in thine house.

In the New Testament “Pastors” are Ordained by the Lord to Live and eat of the Gospel.
1 Cor 9:13-14

Do ye not know that they which minister (to work, to toil or to be engaged in as a task or occupation) about holy things live (and eat) of the things of the temple? and they which wait at (serve) the altar are partakers with (share jointly, participate in) the altar?

Even so hath the Lord ordained (commanded, arranged thoroughly, instituted, set in order) that they which preach (proclaim, declare, speak of or teach) the gospel should live of the gospel.

Whatever is offered as a ‘gift offering’ by your ‘Flock’ should be the Best thereof!

Num 18:29

Out of all your gifts ye shall offer every heave offering (gift offering) of the LORD, of all the best thereof (the richest or the finest), even the hallowed (holy or consecrated) part thereof out of it.

“Pastors/Priests” should not be taxed on their Salaries.

Ezra 7:24

Also we certify (make known to) you, that touching any of the priests and Levites, singers, porters (door keepers), Nethinims (Temple servants), or ministers of this house of God, it shall not be lawful to impose toll (tribute in money), tribute (excise tax on articles consumed), or custom (toll on goods at a road), upon them.

As a “Pastor”, once your Congregation is able to pay you a full Salary, I believe you should live off that Salary. Anything you receive above that Salary, you should always give away Freely. In other words, whatever you have received Freely of the Lord do not sell; but rather Give Away Freely whatever information, insight, Wisdom, Knowledge, or Understanding that God has given to you. This includes income received from the writing of Books, being on the Radio, TV, Movies, Conferences, etc. (Acts 8:18-24 Micah 3:11) Many a “Pastor” has fallen because of riches! (Psalms 49:6-7 Proverbs 8:18 11:4 11:28 13:7 1 Timothy 6:10)

Matt 10:8

Heal the sick, cleanse the lepers, raise the dead, cast out devils: freely (1432 ‘gratuitously’ - which means given unearned or without recompense; not involving a return benefit, compensation, or consideration; costing nothing) ye have received, freely (1432) give (bestow, commit, deliver, grant, minister, offer).

B. THE PASTOR’S TITHES AND OFFERINGS:

“Pastors” like all Christians are to honor the Lord with their giving of ‘Tithes and Offerings’. (Malachi 3:8) Most “Pastors” are very Faithful about ‘Tithing’, especially ‘Tithing’ back into their own Church; however, some do not give ‘Offerings’. As a “Pastor”, it is important to the Lord for you to also give ‘Offerings’. ‘Offerings’ provide a great way to give ‘outside’ of your Church such as to Missions, Para-Church Ministries or to any proven Work of the Lord.

As has already been stated in this Section:

Prov 3:9
9 **Honour the LORD with thy substance** (your wealth and riches or even if you have just ‘enough’ - which means occurring in such quantity, quality, or scope as to fully meet demands, needs, or expectations), **and with the firstfruits** (beginning, first part or chief) **of all thine increase**:

“Pastors/Priests” should also ‘Tithe’ a tenth part (10%) or more from all of their ‘first-fruits’. The ‘Tithe’ is usually considered to be a tenth part (10%) as laid out by Abraham when returning from the ‘slaughter of the Kings’ gave a tenth part of all the spoils to Melchisedec. (Hebrews 7:1-2, 4, 6, 9) (*Note - This was before the Law was established!)

Here the Lord promises that if you will bring all the ‘Tithes’ including your own into the storehouse of The ‘House of the Lord’ (which includes all of the ‘Body of Christ’); He will open the windows of Heaven and pour you out a Blessing that you will not be able to contain.

**Mal 3:10**

10 **Bring ye all the tithes** (tenth part) **into the storehouse** (depository or treasure house), **that there may be meat** (food) **in mine house** (House-hold), **and prove me now herewith, saith the LORD of hosts**, if I will not open you the windows of heaven, and pour you out a blessing, that there shall not be room enough to receive it.

In the following Scriptures, the Levites and/or “Priests” (who I believe are a similitude or likeness of the “Pastors” of today), gave an ‘Offering’ from their income or gain to the “Chief Priest” Aaron, (who I believe is a similitude or likeness of the “Apostle” of today). (Hebrews 3:1) This ‘Offering’ was called a ‘Heave Offering’ which in Hebrew is’ teruwmah’ - which is a present or gift (as offered up), especially in sacrifice or as tribute. This ‘Heave Offering’ was offered up to the Lord and then given to Aaron the “Chief Priest”.

**Num 18:25-28**

25 **And the LORD spake unto Moses, saying,**

26 **Thus speak unto the Levites, and say unto them, When ye take of the children of Israel the tithes** (tenth part) **which I have given you from them for your inheritance, then ye shall offer up an heave offering** (a present or gift) **of it for the LORD, even a tenth part of the tithe.**

27 **And this your heave offering** (a present or gift) **shall be reckoned** (considered, regarded, esteemed or imputed) **unto you, as though it were the corn of the threshingfloor, and as the fulness of the winepress.**

28 **Thus ye also shall offer an heave offering** (a present or gift) **unto the LORD of all your tithes** (tenth part), **which ye receive of the children of Israel; and ye shall give thereof the LORD’s heave offering** (a present or gift) **to Aaron the priest.**

The reason that the “Pastor” should give an ‘Offering’ to the “Apostles” of today is because the “Apostles”, just like the “Chief Priests”, have no inheritance nor part within the Churches. This is because their work is between or among the Churches and God is their part and their inheritance. This means “Apostles” are dependent only on God for their income and God has included you the “Pastor” personally as a source for their income.

**Num 18:20**
And the LORD spake unto Aaron, Thou shalt have no inheritance in their land, neither shalt thou have any part among them; I am thy part and thine inheritance among the children of Israel.

‘Offerings’ should always be given willingly and from the Heart. They may be given on a regular basis, on occasion, or on a one-time basis as the Lord leads. The amount of the “Offering” is between you and the leading of the Lord.

Exod 25:1-2
1 And the LORD spake unto Moses, saying, 2 Speak unto the children of Israel, that they bring me an offering: of every man that giveth it willingly with his heart ye shall take my offering.

Remember however, that ‘Offerings’ are actually given to the Lord.

Lev 23:38
38 Beside the sabbaths of the LORD, and beside your gifts, and beside all your vows, and beside all your freewill offerings, which ye give unto the LORD.

(For a more in-depth study about giving by the “Pastor” and/or the Church, Read the Study Guide “Tithes and Offerings” written by Timothy II)

C. THE PASTOR’S HOUSING:
According to the Scriptures “Pastors” may receive the cost of their ‘Housing’ from their Church. Sometimes this is provided for by a ‘House’ on the Church property or is sometimes provided for by a ‘Housing’ allowance.

Here the Levites received ‘Tithes’ of land from the people that was provided through the increase of all the production of the land. This in turn was divided among them in just proportions, for their Service of the Tabernacle of the Congregation.

Num 18:21
21 And, behold, I have given the children of Levi all the tenth in Israel for an inheritance, for their service which they serve of the tabernacle of the congregation.

Here the “Priests” and Levites that were “Ministers” of the Sanctuary were to have their ‘Housing’ in the portion of the land that was round about the Sanctuary that they might be near to their work. Of course with today’s available transportation this may not be as important as it was then, however, it is still a good idea that “Pastors” also as “Ministers” of the Sanctuary should reside somewhat near to where they are Called.

Ezek 45:4
**IX. FAMILY MATTERS:**

The ‘Family’ unit was created by God and is the most important part of our existence here on earth. As a “Pastor” no matter whether you are celibate, married or single, divorced or widowed, or have children or not, you are most likely to have some relationship as part of a “Family”. Even if not your own personal ‘Family’, you are still considered in and part of the ‘Family’ of God. (Psalms 68:5-6 107:41 Ephesians 3:14-15)

It is therefore most important for all “Pastors”, no matter what country you live in, to know what the “Family” unit consists of, how it is meant to function, and to understand what standards God has set up for the ‘Family’.

*Please note here that God’s standards for the ‘Family’ must have the preeminence over and overrule all the ‘Cultures’ of the world.*

The Bible teaches that as a “Pastor” you must have your own personal ‘Family in Order’. The following Scriptures contain the whole ‘Counsel of the Lord’ that is pertinent in helping you to be able to do this. This section is also valuable for “Pastors” to help you with the Biblical Counseling of your ‘Flock’ in the ‘Matters of the Family’.

**A. THE MEANING OF THE WORD FAMILY:**

The following is the meaning of the Word ‘Family’.

‘Family’ in the Dictionary is:

- The basic unit in society traditionally consisting of two parents rearing their children.

‘Family’ in Hebrew is:

**OT:4940 mishpachah** (mish-paw-khaw’); from OT:8192 [compare OT:8198]; a family, i.e. circle of relatives; figuratively, a class (of persons), a species (of animals) or sort (of things); by extens. a tribe or people:

KJV - family, kind (-red).

**OT:1004 bayith** (bah’-yith); probably from OT:1129 abbreviated; a house (in the greatest variation of applications, especially family, etc.):

KJV - court, daughter, door, dungeon, family, forth of, great as would contain, hangings, home [born], [winter] house (-hold), inside (-ward), palace, place, prison, steward, tablet, temple, web, within (-out).

‘Family’ in Greek is:

**NT:3614 oikia** (oy-kee’-ah); from NT:3624; properly, residence (abstractly), but usually (concretely) an abode (literally or figuratively); by implication a family (especially domestics):

KJV - home, house (-hold).
B. THE FAMILY:
The following Scriptures reveal how God created the ‘Family’.
Here ‘God the Father’ states to ‘God the Son’ and to ‘God the Holy Spirit’ (which make up the ‘Godhead’), “let us make mankind in our image, after our likeness”. (Acts 17:29 Romans 1:20 Colossians 2:9)

Gen 1:26-28
26 And God (OT:430 ‘elohiym’ - plural of OT:433; specifically used (in the plural thus, especially with the article) of the supreme God) said, Let us make man (120 ‘adam’ - a human being, mankind, a person) in our image (resemblance), after our likeness (‘similitude’ - which is a visible likeness):…

So God created in His own image male and female.

27 So God (OT:430) created man (120 ‘adam’ - a human being, mankind, a person) in his own image (resemblance), in the image (resemblance) of God (OT:430) created he him; male and female created he them.

Then God Blessed them and Commanded them to be ‘fruitful and multiply’, thus beginning the creation of the rest of the ‘Family’.

28 And God blessed them, and God said unto them, Be fruitful (bear fruit, bring forth fruit), and multiply (increase), and replenish the earth, and subdue it:…

The ‘Family’ therefore is the first and most important unit of God’s creations. That is why God Commands that ‘Overseers’ of His Church such as “Pastors” and ‘Christian Leaders’ must keep their ‘Family in Order’. If you cannot properly maintain rule over your own ‘Family’, how can you take care of the Church of God? (Titus 1:6 1 Timothy 3:12)

1 Tim 3:4-5
4 One that ruleth (presides, practices and maintains rule over) well his own house (Family), having his children in subjection (obedience) with all gravity (honesty or ‘probity’ - which is adherence to the highest principles and ideals);
5(For if a man know not how to rule (maintain rule over) his own house (Family), how shall he take care of the church of God?)

C. FAMILY TIME:
‘Family Time’ is Time well spent!
‘Family Time’ is one of the areas that many “Pastors” seem to neglect. Some do not take quality time to be alone with their Spouse, to be with their Children, nor do they take ‘Family Vacations’. These are problems that can very well lead to the Children becoming disobedient and the ‘Family’ becoming ‘Out of Order’, and if continued can sometimes lead to divorce.
I remember while ministering to a “Pastor” in the Philippines I was led by the Holy Spirit to recommend
to him that he needed to take his Wife on a vacation. He then proudly stated that he had never taken a vacation in seven years. When confronting his Wife she began to cry and said that she had always wanted to take a vacation but she was afraid to ask. I then prayed over them, and since they had little money, I gave them some extra money. They then announced to the Congregation that they were going to be gone for the next week and the Assistant “Pastor” was going to lead the Church. The whole Church then stood up and applauded.

I believe this was God’s plan to help save this “Pastor’s” Marriage and his Church.

Jesus confirms that there is a need for those in Ministry to take some time to rest a while.

Here He told the “Apostles” to take a short vacation and rest.


31 And he said unto them, Come ye yourselves apart (separate) into a desert (solitary) place, and rest (take ease, refresh’, or to ‘repose’ - which is to lie at rest) a while; for there were many coming and going, and they had no leisure (time) so much as to eat.

32 And they departed into a desert (solitary) place by ship privately.

A good idea for “Pastors” to keep your Spouses happy is to take them out to dinner by yourselves. I learned a long time ago after over 60 years of marriage that it is important to do this. If you have Children get a babysitter.

The great thing about eating dinner out alone with your Spouse is that you can sit across from them at the table and look at each other face to face. This will bring about communication with your Spouse that you may not receive at home, because at home someone usually has to prepare the meal, serve it, and clean up the dishes afterward, so your full attention is not on each other.

Prov 15:17

17 Better is a dinner of herbs (vegetables) where love is, than a stalled (fatted) ox (calf) and hatred therewith.

Another important part of valuable ‘Family Time’ is just to take time to have some good old plain fun. There are many different ways for a ‘Family’ to have fun together and it doesn’t need to cost a lot of money. Some of our best ‘Family Times’ when I was a child took place during ‘the Great Depression’ when we were very poor. At that time, we often listened to the radio, read comic books, and played board games such as Monopoly, Chess, Checkers, Chinese-Checkers, and Yahtzee. We also played children’s games such as, Marbles, Hopscotch, Tag, Jump-rope, Kick the Can, Kick ball, and Keep away. Later on we played organized sports such as Football, Baseball, Basketball, Volleyball, Tennis, etc.

For your own ‘Family’ fun, there are also many organizations that your children or young people can join, such as the Girl and Boy Scouts, the Brownies, the Campfire Girls, Boys and Girls Clubs, the YMCA and YWCA. Also for those of you with musical talents, listening or playing music, rejoicing and singing and making melody to the Lord in your hearts is always a great way to have fun. (Ephesians 5:19)

Jer 30:19

19 And out of them shall proceed thanksgiving and the voice of them that make merry: and I will multiply them, and they shall not be few; I will also glorify them, and they shall not be small.
Jer 31:4
4 Again I will build thee, and thou shalt be built, O virgin of Israel: thou shalt again be adorned with thy tabrets, and shalt go forth in the dances of them that make merry.

As a “Pastor”, because of your Love for God, there is really no excuse for you not to be able to rejoice and just have some fun with your ‘Family’. (Matthew 11:30)

Ps 5:11
11 But let all those that put their trust in thee rejoice (8055 brighten up, cheer up, be glad, joyful merry, gleesome, and ‘blithe’ - which means to be of a happy lighthearted character or disposition): let them ever shout for joy, because thou defendest them: let them also that love thy name be joyful (5970 jump for joy) in thee.

Ps 68:3
3 But let the righteous be glad; let them rejoice (5970 jump for joy) before God: vea, let them exceedingly rejoice (7797 be bright, cheerful, glad, and make mirth).

Ps 32:11
11 Be glad (8055) in the LORD, and rejoice (1523 spin around, be glad, be joyful), ve righteous: and shout for joy, all ye that are upright in heart.

Psalms 33:1-3
1 Rejoice (shout for joy) in the LORD, O ye righteous: for praise is comely (suitable, beautiful, or becoming) for the upright.
2 Praise the LORD with harp: sing unto him with the psaltery and an instrument of ten strings.
3 Sing unto him a new song; play skilfully with a loud noise (acclamation of joy).

D. SEX IN MARRIAGE:
God first created Man in His own image. Then God created the Woman out of the Man as a ‘Help Mate’.

Gen 2:18
18 And the LORD God said, It is not good that the man should be alone; I will make him an help (to surround, protect, to aid, and/or to ‘succor’ - which is something or someone that furnishes relief) meet (a part or opposite; specifically a counterpart or mate) for him.

Gen 2:21-25
21 And the LORD God caused a deep sleep to fall upon Adam and he slept: and he took one of his ribs, and closed up the flesh instead thereof (in the same place);
22 And the rib, which the LORD God had taken from man, made he a woman (802 - A Wife), and brought her unto the man.
23 And Adam said, This is now bone of my bones, and flesh of my flesh: she shall be called Woman (802 - A Wife), because she was taken out of Man.

Then God created Marriage between the Man and the Woman and they became Husband and Wife. Thus they became as one flesh, and when they were both naked they were not ashamed.

24 Therefore shall a man leave his father and his mother, and shall cleave (to cling, adhere, abide fast, be joined together, or stick together) unto his wife (802 - Woman): and they shall be one (united, altogether) flesh (body, person, skin, or ‘pudenda’ - which means the external genital organs of a human
being).

25 And they were both naked, the man and his wife, and were not ashamed.

God created ‘Sex in Marriage’ not only to be enjoyed, but also to accomplish His commandment to be ‘Fruitful and to Multiply’ in order to replenish the earth.

**Gen 1:28**
28 And God blessed them, and God said unto them, Be fruitful, and multiply, and replenish the earth,…

Here in the New Testament Paul recommends in order to avoid fornication, every Man should have his own Wife and every Woman should have her own Husband. Notice that Marriage here only allows for one spouse and that spouse is of the opposite Sex!

**1 Cor 7:2**
2 Nevertheless, to avoid fornication (which includes harlotry, adultery, incest, idolatry or unlawful lust of either sex), let every man have his own wife, and let every woman have her own husband.

**1 Cor 7:9**
9 But if they cannot contain (exercise self-restraint, or be temperate), let them marry: for it is better to marry than to burn (to be inflamed with lust).

In the performance of ‘Sex in Marriage’ the Husband and the Wife should show respect, affection and kindness in their Sexual intimacy.

**1 Cor 7:3-5**
3 Let the husband render unto the wife due benevolence (respect, affection and kindness): and likewise also the wife unto the husband.

In order to show respect, affection and kindness, the Husband and the Wife must lovingly give their power (authority or control) over their own bodies to one another.

4 The wife hath not power (exercise authority or control) of her own body, but the husband: and likewise also the husband hath not power (exercise authority or control) of his own body, but the wife.

Here, the Husband and Wife are encouraged not to deprive one another of Sex unless it is agreed upon for a time to give yourselves to prayer and fasting. Then it is important to soon come together again so as not to be tempted of the Devil.

5 Defraud (deprive) ye not one the other, except it be with consent for a time, that ye may give yourselves to fasting and prayer; and come together again, that Satan tempt you not for your incontinency (lack of self-restraint or self-control).

**E. THE HUSBAND AND FATHER IN ORDER:**
The following Scriptures contain the ‘Counsel of the Lord’ that relates to “Pastors” as a ‘Husband’ and a
‘Father’. If you will absorb these Scriptures and follow them, it will help you to keep your ‘Family’ and ‘House in Order’.

1. HUSBANDS:
As already mentioned, when a Man leaves his Father and Mother, he is to cleave to his Wife. Then the two become as one flesh and he becomes known as a ‘Husband’. (Genesis 2:24  Matthew 19:5  Mark 10:7-8  Ephesians 5:31)

When a Man finds a Wife, he finds a good thing and obtains favor with the Lord.

Prov 18:22
22 Whoso findeth a wife findeth a good thing, and obtaineth favour (delight and good pleasure) of the LORD.

As a ‘Husband’ let your fountain be blessed and rejoice with the Wife of your youth. (Malachi 2:14-15)

Prov 5:18-19
18 Let thy fountain (issue, or a seminal or menstrual flux) be blessed: and rejoice with the wife of thy youth.

Let your Wife’s breasts (as the seat of Love) satisfy you continually and always be ravished (intoxicated) with her Love.

19 Let her be as the loving hind (young deer) and pleasant (gracious) roe (doe); let her breasts (as the seat of love) satisfy thee at all times (continually); and be thou ravished (intoxicated or enraptured) always with her love.

The ‘Husband’ is the Head of the Wife, just as Christ is the Head of the Church. This means that God holds you the ‘Husband’ responsible for your Wife and for your ‘Family’. Therefore, even though a wise ‘Husband’ allows his Wife to make decisions together with him, the final decision must rest on the ‘Husband’.

Because the ‘Husband’ is the Head of the Wife and the ‘Family’, the ‘Husband’ is to lead the ‘Family’ in all ‘Spiritual Matters’ such as Prayer, reading the Bible, Blessing the food, going to Church, etc. The ‘Husband’ is also the ‘protector’ of the Wife just as Christ is the deliverer and ‘protector’ of the “Body of Christ”. Therefore, the ‘Husband is responsible for the safety, the financial security, and the ‘protection’ of the Wife and the “Family”.

Eph 5:23
23 For the husband is the head of the wife, even as Christ is the head of the church: and he is the savior (deliverer and protector) of the body.

As a ‘Husband’ you are to Love your Wife just as Christ Loves the Church and you must be willing to give up, surrender and sacrifice yourself for her.

Eph 5:25
25 Husbands, love (25 - ‘agapao’) your wives, even as Christ also loved (25 - ‘agapao’) the church, and gave (gave up or surrendered) himself for it:
As a ‘Husband’ you are to Love your Wife as your own body. If you Love your Wife as your own body, you prove that you also Love yourself.

**Eph 5:28**

28 So ought men to love (25 - ‘agapao’) **their wives as their own bodies.** He that loveth (25 - ‘agapao’) **his wife loveth** (25 - ‘agapao’) **himself.**

**Eph 5:33**

33 Nevertheless let every one of you in particular so love (25 - ‘agapao’) **his wife even as himself;**...

As a ‘Husband’ you are not only to Love your Wife, but you are not to be ‘bitter’ against her.

**Col 3:19**

19 **Husbands, love (25 - ‘agapao’) your wives, and be not bitter** (to ‘embitter’ - which is to excite bitter feelings in; or ‘pungent’ - which is being sharp and to the point or causing a sharp or irritating sensation; or ‘acrid’ - which is sharp and harsh or unpleasantly pungent in taste or odor, or deeply or violently bitter) **against them.**

As a wise ‘Husband’, give your Wife an occasional ‘gift’ such as perfume, even if it isn’t a special occasion.

**Prov 27:9**

9 **Ointment** (especially liquid as from the olive and often perfumed) and **perfume** (sweet incense) **rejoice** (brighten up, cheer up, make glad, make joyful, and make merry) the heart;…

As a ‘Husband’, if your ‘prayers’ aren’t being answered, perhaps the following Scripture explains the reason why!

**1 Peter 3:7**

7 Likewise, ye husbands, **dwell** (together, or reside together as a Family) **with them** (your Wife) according to knowledge (knowing or being aware of), **giving honour** (value, esteem and dignity) unto the wife, as unto the weaker (more feeble or of less strength) **vessel, and as being heirs together** (co-heirs or joint heirs) **of the grace** (gift or joy, especially the Divine influence upon the heart) **of life; that your prayers be not hindered** (impeded or detained).

2. **FATHERS:**

As a “Pastor” it is always a great privilege when you become a ‘Father’. As the Bible says, Children are an inheritance of the Lord and the fruit of your Wife’s womb is His reward. Happy and Blessed are the ‘Fathers’ who have many Children.

**Ps 127:3-5**

3 Lo, children are an heritage (inheritance or portion) of the LORD: and the fruit of the womb is his reward.
4 As arrows are in the hand of a mighty man; so are children of the youth (young people).
5 **Happy** (Blessed) **is the man that hath his quiver** (arrow-case) full of them;…

A just and righteous ‘Father’ that walks in his ‘integrity’ will have Blessed and Happy Children that will
follow after him.

**Prov 20:7**

7 The just (lawful or righteous) man walketh in his integrity (completeness, perfection, uprightness, or morally innocent): his children are blessed (happy) after him (that follow after him).

The ‘Father’ who has ‘righteous’ Children will greatly rejoice.

**Prov 23:24**

24 The father of the righteous (just or lawful) shall greatly rejoice (spin around, be glad, be joyful):…

Whom the Lord Loves as His Children, He corrects. As a ‘Father’, if you truly ‘Love’ your Children it is your responsibility to also correct, chasten, convince, reason, rebuke and reprove your Children!

**Prov 3:12**

12 For whom the LORD loveth he correcteth (chastens, convinces, reasons, rebukes, reproves); even as a father the son in whom he delighteth (is pleased with).

If you spare or hold back the use of the rod for correction and/or punishment of your Children, the Bible states that in the eyes of God it means that you actually ‘hate’ your Children!

**Prov 13:24**

24 He that spareth (restrains, refrains, refuses or holds back) his rod (of correction or punishing stick) hateth (hates personally or utterly hates) his son: but he that loveth him chasteneth (corrects, disciplines, warns, instructs and/or rebukes) him betimes (early or speedily).

As a ‘Father’ however, there is a ‘balance’ in how you discipline your Children. Therefore, when you discipline your Children, be careful not to provoke them to anger or wrath which might lead them to become discouraged. Know when to be harsh in your discipline and when to use mild rebuke and/or warnings.

A good method to help ‘balance’ your discipline is to ‘pray’ before you react to any serious problems or disturbances that are caused by your Children. Also, invite the Holy Spirit into the situation and contemplate on what Jesus would say and/or do. This will help to give you some insight into what action you need to take.

**Col 3:21**

21 Fathers, provoke (stimulate) not your children to anger, lest they be discouraged (to be spiritless, disheartened or dismayed).

**Eph 6:4**

4 And, ye fathers, provoke (enrage or anger) not your children to wrath: but bring them up in the nurture (education, training, instruction and disciplinary correction) and admonition (mild rebuke or warning) of the Lord.

**1 Thess 2:11**

11 As we know how we exhorted (implored, beseeched, entreated and prayed) and comforted (encouraged and consoled) and charged (testified or witnessed to) every one of you, as a father doth
his children.

As a ‘Father’ you are responsible to teach your Children about the Lord. Here it is suggested to use the Bible and to speak to them through ‘parables’ or ‘proverbs’. (Proverbs 1:4-6)

- According to the Dictionary, a ‘parable’ is a usually short fictitious story that illustrates a moral attitude or a religious principle; and a ‘proverb’ is a brief popular epigram (concise poem) or maxim.
- In Hebrew a ‘parable’ is a proverb or a ‘simile’ - which is a figure of speech comparing two unlike things; or a ‘pithy maxim’ - ‘pithy’ is having substance and point and ‘maxim’ - is a general truth, fundamental principle, or rule of conduct.

Ps 78:2-7
2 I will open my mouth in a parable (a proverb, a ‘simile’ or a ‘pithy maxim’) I will utter dark sayings (puzzles, conundrums, hard questions, proverbs and riddles) of old:
3 Which we have heard and known, and our fathers have told (enumerated, recounted, declared and showed) us.
4 We will not hide them from their children, shewing to the generation to come the praises of the LORD, and his strength, and his wonderful works (marvelous things and miracles) that he hath done.
5 For he established a testimony in Jacob, and appointed a law in Israel, which he commanded our fathers, that they should make them known (teach, instruct and show) to their children:
6 That the generation to come might know them, even the children which should (will) be born; who should (will) arise and declare them to their children:
7 That they might set their hope (trust and confidence) in God, and not forget (to be oblivious of from want of memory or attention) the works of God, but keep his commandments:

The following Scriptures are about Elijah the Prophet in the Book of Malachi and John the Baptist in the Book of Luke. Although these Scriptures may refer to the Children of Israel, I believe there is a deeper meaning for those of us in the “Body of Christ”. In these last days, particularly in America, there are currently many broken relationships between ‘Fathers’ and their Children. I believe God is raising up many Men of God in the ‘Spirit and Power of Elijah’ in order to help turn the hearts and feelings of the ‘Fathers’ to the Children and the hearts and feelings of the Children to their ‘Fathers’. This in turn will bring restoration to the ‘Family’ unit. (2 Timothy 3:1-5)

Mal 4:5-6
5 Behold, I will send you Elijah the prophet before the coming of the great (mighty) and dreadful (fearful) day of the LORD:
6 And he shall turn the heart (feelings) of the fathers to the children, and the heart (feelings) of the children to their fathers, lest I come and smite (strike) the earth with a curse.

I believe the deeper meaning here in Luke is that in these last days God is raising up many Men of God in the ‘Spirit and Power of Elijah’. This is not only to help return the hearts and thoughts and feelings of the ‘Fathers’ to the Children and the disobedient Children to the wisdom of the just ‘Fathers’, but also to make ready a people prepared for the soon Coming of the Lord! This will not only restore the ‘Family’ unit but also the ‘Family’ of God! (Revelation 19:7)
Luke 1:17
17 And he shall go before him in the spirit and power ('dunamis') of Elias (Elijah), to turn the hearts (thoughts and feelings) of the fathers to the children, and the disobedient (un-persuadable or 'contumacious' - which is stubbornly disobedient or rebellious) to the wisdom of the just (righteous and Holy); to make ready a people prepared for the Lord.

F. THE WIFE AND MOTHER IN ORDER:
The following Scriptures contain the ‘Counsel of the Lord’ that relates to ‘Wives’ and ‘Mothers’ that will help to keep your ‘Family’ and House in Order.

1. WIVES:
A wise ‘Wife’ is the ‘Builder’ of the Home. Much like the birds that build their nests, the male supplies the materials for the nest and the female preps the nest and gets it ready for the soon coming ‘Family’. So should a wise ‘Wife’ build and set up the House for her ‘Family’. Notice this can also include the ‘repairing’ of her House which is a continuous process.

Prov 14:1
1 Every wise (skilful) woman (Wife) buildeth (builds, sets up, makes and/or repairs) her house: but the foolish (silly or ‘ perverse’ - which means turned away from what is right or good; or obstinate in opposing what is right, reasonable, or accepted) plucketh it down (pulls it down, breaks, destroys, overthrows, or ruins it) with her hands.

A ‘Wife’ that is a ‘virtuous’ woman, is one that is able, active, strong, mighty, of substance, valiant and worthy! Her value is far above precious stones and she is a ‘Crown’ to her Husband.

Prov 31:10
10 Who can find a virtuous (able, active, strong, mighty, of substance, valiant and worthy) woman (wife)? for her price (value) is far above rubies.

Prov 12:4
4 A virtuous (able, active, strong, mighty, of substance, valiant and worthy) woman is a crown to her husband: but she that maketh ashamed (disappointed, confounded, or confused) is as rottenness in his bones.

A ‘prudent’ ‘Wife’ is one that is intelligent, considerate, skillful, successful, understanding and wise; and she is a gift from the Lord. That is why it is so important to marry in the Lord! (1 Corinthians 11:11)

Prov 19:14
14 ... and a prudent (intelligent, considerate, skillful, successful, understanding and wise) wife is from the LORD.

‘Wives’ are to be ‘subject’ to their own Husbands as unto the Lord. This is because the Husband is the Head of the ‘Wife’ just as Christ is the Head of the Church.

Eph 5:22-24
22 Wives, submit yourselves unto your own husbands, as unto the Lord.
23 For the husband is the head of the wife, even as Christ is the head of the church: and he is the saviour of the body.

24 Therefore as the church is subject (5293 - subordinate, obedient and submitted) unto Christ, so let the wives be (subordinate, obedient and submitted) to their own husbands in everything (all, all manner of, always, and thoroughly).

Eph 5:33
33 ... and the wife see that she reverence (be in awe of, or revere) her husband.

Col 3:18
18 Wives, submit yourselves (5293 - subordinate, be obedient, and subject) unto your own husbands, as it is fit (proper) in (denoting a fixed position and a relation of rest) the Lord.

‘Wives’ that are in ‘subjection’ to their own ‘Husbands’, and are Married to an ‘unbeliever’, may be able to bring about their Salvation by their behavior. Therefore, be in ‘subjection’ and Trust in God!

1 Peter 3:1
1 Likewise, ye wives, be in subjection (5293 - be subordinate, obedient and submitted) to your own husbands; that, if any obey not (disbelieve) the word, they also may without the word be won by the conversation (behavior) of the wives:

1 Peter 3:5
5 For after this manner in the old time (in time past) the holy women (Wives) also, who trusted in God, adorned (put in proper order) themselves, being in subjection (5293 - being subordinate, obedient and submitted) unto their own husbands:

The Aged Women in Church that are, or have been ‘Wives’, and that have their House in Order, should help teach and guide the younger Women in the Church.

Titus 2:3-5
3 The aged women likewise, that they be in behavior (a position, condition or demeanor) as becometh holiness (as reverent), not false accusers (slanderers or ‘traducers’ - which means to expose to shame or blame by means of falsehood and misrepresentation), not given to much (or too often) wine, teachers of good things (valuable or virtuous);

4 That they may teach the young women to be sober (of sound mind, self-controlled, discreet and temperate), to love (5362 ‘philandros’ - which is affectionate as a wife) their husbands, to love (5388 ‘philoteknos’ - which is fond of one’s children or maternal) their children.

5 To be discreet (moderate as to opinion or passion), chaste (modest, clean and pure), keepers at home, good, obedient (5293 - subordinate, submitted and subject) to their own husbands, that the word of God be not blasphemed (defamed or spoken evil of).

The following is a warning for Women not to be a brawling or contentious ‘Wife’.

Prov 21:9 Prov 25:24
9 It is better to dwell in a corner of the housetop, than with a brawling (‘contentious’ - which means exhibiting an often perverse and wearisome tendency to quarrels and disputes) woman (Wife) in a wide house.

Prov 21:19 Prov 19:13
19 It is better to dwell in the wilderness, than with a contentious (brawling or ‘contentious’ - which
means exhibiting an often perverse and wearisome tendency to quarrels and disputes) and an angry (indignant, provoking and spiteful) woman (Wife).

2. MOTHERS:
The following Scriptures contain the ‘Counsel of the Lord’ that relates to ‘Mothers’. Here in Proverbs it reveals the importance for ‘Mothers’ to clearly lay out their ‘Family’ precepts, statutes and rules, so that their children will understand them and learn not to forsake them.

Prov 6:20 Proverbs 1:8
20 My son (and/or daughter), keep thy father's commandment, and forsake (thrust off, reject, or remit) not the law, (precepts or statutes) of thy mother:

If a ‘Mother’ has clearly laid out the precepts, statutes and ‘Family’ rules, the results will be that she will have raised wise children. She will have joy and shall rejoice in them.

Prov 23:24
24 … and he that begetteth a wise child shall have joy (8055 - to brighten up, cheer up, made glad, be merry) of him.

Prov 23:25
25 Thy father and thy mother shall be glad (8055 - to brighten up, cheer up, made glad, be merry), and she that bare thee shall rejoice (spin around, be glad, be joyful).

In order to keep her House in Order, the ‘Mother’ as well as the Father needs to discipline her Children.

Prov 29:15
15 The rod (a stick for punishing or correction) and reproof (chastisement, correction, reasoning and rebuke) give wisdom: but a child left to himself bringeth his mother to shame (disappointment).

Prov 29:17
17 Correct (chastise with blows or words, instruct, punish, reprove, teach) thy son, and he shall give thee rest (comfort and quiet); yea, he shall give delight unto thy soul.

Even the ‘Mother’ of a King is to teach her Child the values of how to live properly.

Prov 31:1-5
1 The words of king Lemuel, the prophecy that his mother taught him.
2 What, my son? and what, the son of my womb? and what, the son of my vows?
3 Give not thy strength (virtue) unto women, nor thy ways (course of life) to that which destroyeth kings.
4 It is not for kings, O Lemuel, it is not for kings to drink (intoxicating) wine; nor for princes (rulers) strong drink (intensely alcoholic liquor):
5 Lest they drink, and forget (to be oblivious of, from want of memory or attention) the law, and pervert the judgment (cause or justice) of any of the afflicted.

For those of you Wives that want to become ‘Mothers’, there is always hope, so keep on praying! God has caused many ‘barren women’ to become joyful ‘Mothers’ through Miraculous healings, through adoption, by working in the nursery at Church or by becoming a Teacher of Children.
Ps 113:9  
9 **He maketh the barren** (not reproducing, incapable of producing offspring, not yet or not recently pregnant) **woman to keep house, and to be a joyful mother** (as the bond of the Family) **of children**. **Praise ye the LORD.**

G. PARENTS:
The following Scriptures contain the ‘Counsel of the Lord’ that relates to ‘Parents’ to help you to keep your ‘Children in Order’.

It is the responsibility of the ‘Parents’ to teach their Children the Scriptures, because even from a young age the Scriptures will make them wise unto Salvation through Faith which is in Jesus Christ.

2 Tim 3:15  
15 **And that from a child** (an infant or young child) **thou hast known the holy scriptures, which are able to make thee wise unto salvation through faith which is in Christ Jesus.**

It is the responsibility of you the ‘Parents’ to Correct and to Discipline your Children.

Prov 20:11  
11 **Even a child** (a boy or girl from the age of infancy to adolescence) **is known by his doings** (acts good or bad), **whether his work** (acts or deeds) **be pure** (clean), **and whether it be right** (upright).

Prov 22:6  
6 **Train up** (discipline) **a child** (a boy or girl from the age of infancy to adolescence) **in the way he should go: and when he is old** (aged), **he will not depart** (rebel, turn away or withdraw) **from it.**

Prov 22:15  
15 **Foolishness** (silliness or folly) **is bound in the heart of a child** (a boy or girl from the age of infancy to adolescence); **but the rod** (a punishing stick) **of correction shall drive it far from him.**

Prov 23:13  
13 **Withhold not correction** (chastisement, reproof, warning, instruction, restraint, discipline, and rebuke) **from the child: for if thou beatest him with the rod** (a punishing stick), **he shall not die.**

It is the responsibility of you the ‘Parents’ to teach your Children to understand the “Fear of the Lord”. The “Fear of the Lord” is to hate evil and to depart from it! (Psalms 97:10   Proverbs 8:13   3:7   16:6)

Ps 34:11-14  
11 **Come, ye children, hearken** (hear or listen intelligently with attention and obedience) **unto me: I will teach you the fear of the LORD.**
12 **What man is he that desireth** (is pleased with, or delights in) **life, and loveth many days, that he may see good?**
13 **Keep thy tongue from evil, and thy lips from speaking guile** (deceit, falsehood and treachery).
14 **Depart from evil, and do good; seek peace, and pursue it.**

The Lord will abundantly Bless those ‘Parents’ that “Fear the Lord” and will continue to increase you and your Children more and more.

Ps 115:13-14
13 He will bless (abundantly) them that fear the LORD, both small and great.
14 The LORD shall increase (to add to, continue or conceive again) you more and more, you and your children.

There is strong confidence and security in those of you ‘Parents’ that “Fear the Lord”, because you know that through your hope and trust, your Children will always have a place of refuge.

Prov 14:26
26 In the fear of the LORD is strong confidence (security, assurance, hope and trust): and his children shall have a place of refuge (shelter).

H. CHILDREN:
The following Scriptures contain the ‘Counsel of the Lord’ that relates to the ‘Children’ to help them to understand what their responsibilities are to help keep ‘Order in the House’.

First of all, ‘Children’ need to know that they are special because ‘Children’ are created in the image of God, and of this sort in character and individuality is the Kingdom of Heaven (God).

14 But Jesus said, Suffer (allow or let the) little children, and forbid (prevent not by word or act) them not, to come unto me: for of such (for of this sort in character and individuality) is the kingdom of heaven.

It is the responsibility of ‘Children’ to always Honor and Obey your Father and Mother; if you do, you have the promise of God to live a long life.

12 Honour (Glorify, be honorable to, be chargeable to) thy father and thy mother: that thy days (life) may be long upon the land which the LORD thy God giveth thee.

Eph 6:1-3
1 Children, obey (to heed or conform to a command or authority, or listen attentively to) your parents in the Lord: for this is right.
2 Honour (prize, value and revere) thy father and mother; (which is the first commandment with promise;)
3 That it may be well with thee, and thou mayest live long on the earth.

Col 3:20
20 Children, obey (to heed or conform to a command or authority, or listen attentively to) your parents in all things (all, everything, the whole, all manner of, always, thoroughly): for this is well pleasing unto the Lord.

It is the responsibility of ‘Children’ to hear the instruction of your Father and the law of your Mother.

Prov 1:8 Prov 6:20
8 My son (or daughter), hear the instruction (chastisement, reproof, warning, restraint, correction, discipline, doctrine and rebuke) of thy father, and forsake not the law (precepts, statutes, or to inform or to point out as if by aiming the finger) of thy mother:
Prov 23:22
22 **Hearken** (listen or hear intelligently with attention and obedience) **unto thy father that begat thee, and despise** (disrespect or ‘contemn’ - which is to view or treat with contempt) **not thy mother when she is old**.

Pro 4:1

**Hear, ye children, the instruction** (chastisement, reproof, warning, restraint, correction, discipline, doctrine and rebuke) **of a father, and attend** (hearken, give heed to, mark well, regard) **to know understanding** (knowledge, meaning and wisdom).

The following Scriptures describe what ‘Children should be and/or do:

- Be Wise (intelligent, skilful, and artful).
- Honor and Glorify your Fathers.
- Keep and Obey the Laws of your Parents.
- Endure chastening.

**Prov 10:1**  **Prov 15:20**

1 **A wise** (intelligent, skilful, artful) **son maketh a glad** (brightens up, cheers up, makes joyful, makes merry, and causes to rejoice) **father**:…

**Prov 15:20**
20 … **but a foolish** (stupid or silly) **man despiseth** (scorn or ‘contempt’ - which is a lack of respect or reverence for something; or ‘disesteems’ - which is to regard with disfavor; or ‘disdains’ - which is a feeling of contempt for someone or something regarded as unworthy or inferior) **his mother**.

**Prov 29:3**
3 **Whoso loveth wisdom** (is wise or skilful in mind, word or act) **rejoiceth his father**:…

**Prov 17:6**
6 … **and the glory** (beauty, bravery and honor) **of children are their fathers**.

**Prov 28:7**
7 **Whoso keepeth** (obeys) **the law** (precepts and statutes) **is a wise son**:…

**Heb 12:7**
7 **If ye endure chastening** (disciplinary correction, instruction, nurturing), **God dealeth with you as with sons; for what son is he whom the father chasteneth** (to train up a child, to discipline by punishment, to instruct or teach) **not**?

The following Scriptures describe what ‘Children should not be or do:

- Be foolish (stupid or silly).
- Be a fool (stupid or silly).
- Waste (destroy, oppress or rob) your Father and chase away (drive away, put to flight) your Mother.
- Rob your Parents.
- Be a companion of riotous (loose morally, worthless or ‘prodigal’) men.
- Keep company with harlots.
- Curse your Father or Mother.
- Mock your Father and despise or refuse to obey your Mother.

**Prov 10:1**
1 … **but a foolish** (stupid or silly) **son is the heaviness** (sorrow or grief) **of his mother**.

**Prov 15:20**
20 … **but a foolish** (stupid or silly) **man despiseth** (scorn or ‘contempt’ - which is a lack of respect or reverence for something; or ‘disesteems’ - which is to regard with disfavor; or ‘disdains’ - which is a feeling of contempt for someone or something regarded as unworthy or inferior) **his mother**.
Prov 17:25  Prov 19:13
25 A foolish (stupid or silly) son is a grief (vexation, sorrow) to his father, and bitterness (grief and sorrow) to her that bare him.

Prov 17:21
21 He that begetteth a fool (stupid or silly) doeth it to his sorrow: and the father of a fool (man or woman, stupid, wicked, vile person) hath no joy.

Prov 19:26
26 He that wasteth (destroys, oppresses or robs) his father, and chaseth away (drives away, puts to flight) his mother, is a son that causeth shame (disappointment and confusion), and bringeth reproach (shame, disappointment and confusion).

Prov 28:24
24 Whoso robbeth his father or his mother, and saith, It is no transgression (sin); the same is the companion of (knit together or associated with) a destroyer.

Prov 28:7
7 …but he that is a companion of (or keeps company with) riotous (loose morally, worthless or ‘prodigal’ - which means characterized by profuse or wasteful expenditure) men shameth his father.

Prov 29:3
3 …but he that keepeth company with harlots (adulterers, fornicators, whores) spendeth his substance (for nothing).

Prov 20:20  Matthew 15:4
20 Whoso curseth (despises, afflicts or reviles) his father or his mother, his lamp shall be put out (extinguished, expired, and consumed) in obscure (black) darkness (misery, destruction and/or death).

Prov 30:11
11 There is a generation that curseth (despises, afflicts or reviles) their father, and doth not bless (praise or thank) their mother.

Prov 30:17
17 The eye that mocketh (laughs to scorn) at his father, and despiseth (disrespects or ‘contemns’ - which is to view or treat with contempt) to obey his mother, the ravens of the valley shall pick it out, and the young eagles shall eat it.

I. GRANDCHILDREN:
‘Grandchildren’ are a Blessing to their ‘Grandparents’. A good relationship between ‘Grandparents’ and their ‘Grandchildren’ can help bring ‘Order to the Family’.

Here it states that ‘Grandchildren’ are a Crown to the elderly. The Dictionary states that a Crown is a ‘Reward of Victory’ or a ‘Mark of Honor’ and in the Greek it means a ‘Badge of Royalty’ or a ‘Symbol of Honor’.

Prov 17:6
6 Children’s children (Grandchildren) are the crown of old men (of aged or elder men and women);…

The Lord’s Mercy is forever to those that ‘Fear the Lord’ and His Righteousness unto your ‘Grandchildren’.

Ps 103:17
17 But the mercy (favor, goodness, loving kindness) of the LORD is from everlasting to everlasting (always, eternal, perpetual, without end) upon them that fear him (morally, reverent, afraid, fearful), and his righteousness (justice, virtue) unto children's children (Grandchildren);

If you want to truly become a good and Loving ‘Grandparent’ you should leave some kind of inheritance for your ‘Grandchildren’. This doesn’t just have to be material things but can also include ‘Spiritual’ things.

Prov 13:22
22 A good (Loving) man (man or woman) leaveth an inheritance (divides his inheritance) to his children's children (Grandchildren):

Here Paul commends Timothy for the unfeigned or genuine Faith that was in him. Paul however recalls that this same Faith first dwelled in Timothy’s ‘Grandmother’ Lois, and then she passed it on to Timothy’s ‘Mother’ Eunice, who in turn passed it on to Timothy. Thus Paul is actually commending Timothy’s ‘Grandmother’ for passing down her Faith to her Family.

2 Tim 1:5
5 When I call to remembrance the unfeigned (sincere or genuine) faith that is in thee, which dwelt (dwelled, inhabited or resided) first in thy grandmother Lois, and thy mother Eunice; and I am persuaded that in thee also.

J. ORPHANS:
‘Orphans’ are those Children that have lost their Father and/or their Mother. The cause of this tragedy can happen through various types of circumstances. Although being an ‘Orphan’ is no fault of their own, it is still a very difficult situation for millions of Children throughout the world. This is why ‘Adoption’ has become such an important quality and gift that the Lord has given to many Christians to use today.

The Dictionary states that:
- An ‘Orphan’ is a child deprived by death of one or usually both parents; also one deprived of some protection or advantage.

In Hebrew an ‘Orphan’ is called ‘Fatherless’:

OT:3490 yathowm (yaw-thome'); from an unused root meaning to be lonely; a bereaved person: KJV - fatherless (child), orphan.
OT:369 'ayin (ah'-yin); as if from a primitive root meaning to be nothing or not exist; a non-entity; generally used as a negative particle:
KJV - else, except, fail, [father-] less, be gone, in [-curable], neither, never, no (where), none, nor, (any, thing), not, nothing, to nought, past, un (-searchable), well-nigh, without.
OT:1 'ab (awb); a primitive word; father, in a literal and immediate, or figurative and remote application):
KJV - chief, (fore-) father ([less]), patrimony, principal.

In Greek an ‘Orphan’ is called ‘Fatherless’ or ‘Parentless’:
NT:3737 orphanos (or-fan-os'); of uncertain affinity; bereaved ("orphan"), i.e. parentless: KJV - comfortless, fatherless.

The only time the word ‘Orphans’ is used in the Bible is in this Scripture.

Lam 5:3
3 We are orphans (3490 – a fatherless child, to be lonely, or a bereaved person) and fatherless (1 - a Father; 369 - that is nothing or does not exist, or is a non-entity), our mothers are as widows.

It is important to always remember that God is a Father of the ‘Fatherless’.

Ps 68:5
5 A father (1) of the fatherless (3490), and a judge of the widows, is God in his holy habitation.

Here everyone is warned not to afflict or harm in any way a ‘Fatherless’ child. If you do, God will hear their cry, and then look out!

Ex 22:22-23
22 Ye shall not afflict (6031 - look down upon, browbeat, depress, deal hardly with, defile, force, hurt or ravish) any widow, or fatherless child (3490).
23 If thou afflict (6031) them in any wise, and they cry at all unto me, I will surely hear their cry;

God is the one who will personally execute and fulfill the justice of the ‘Fatherless’.

Deut 10:17-18
17 For the LORD your God is God of gods, and Lord of lords, a great God, a mighty, and a terrible (to be had in reverence), which regardeth not persons, nor taketh reward: 18 He doth execute (accomplishes, fulfils, furnishes, provides) the judgment (justice) of the fatherless (3490) and widow, and loveth the stranger, in giving him food and raiment.

God is the one who judges and defends the ‘Fatherless’ so that they will no more be oppressed.

Ps 10:18
18 To judge (defend) the fatherless (3490) and the oppressed, that the man of the earth may no more oppress (6206 - harass).

God tells all of us to execute true judgment (justice) and not to oppress the ‘Fatherless’.

Zech 7:9-10
9 Thus speaketh the LORD of hosts, saying, Execute true (stabile, truth, trustworthy, faithful, right, and sure) judgment (justice), and shew mercy and compassions every man to his brother: 10 And oppress (6231 - defraud, violate, deceive, wrong) not the widow, nor the fatherless (3490), the stranger, nor the poor; and let none of you imagine evil against his brother in your heart.

God is the one who is the helper, protector and relief to the ‘Fatherless’.
Ps 10:14
14 Thou hast seen it; for thou beholdest mischief and spite, to requite it with thy hand: the poor committeth himself unto thee; thou art the helper (protector, or aid, or ‘succor’ - which means to furnish relief or help): of the fatherless (3490).

God is the one that relieves, restores and lifts up the ‘Fatherless’.

Ps 146:9
9 The LORD preserveth the strangers; he relieveth (restores, lifts up) the fatherless (3490) and widow: but the way of the wicked he turneth upside down.

In the Lord thy God the ‘Fatherless’ will find mercy. Love, compassion and pity.

Hos 14:3
3 Asshur shall not save us; we will not ride upon horses: neither will we say any more to the work of our hands, Ye are our gods: for in thee the fatherless findeth mercy (Love, compassion, and pity).

Dear “Pastor”, we are told in the New Testament that pure religion and undefiled before God is to visit the ‘Fatherless’. The question is, have you or your ‘Flock’ done this lately?

James 1:27
27 Pure (clean and clear) religion (worshipping) and undefiled (unsoiled, not tainted or contaminated) before God and the Father is this, To visit (to go to see, and to relieve) the fatherless (3737 - the bereaved orphan, the parentless, the comfortless) and widows in their affliction (pressure, anguish, burden, persecution, tribulation and trouble), and to keep himself unspotted (blemished physically or morally, without spot) from the world.

K. STRANGE CHILDREN:
The following Scriptures are about a plea to God from King David to rid him from the hand of ‘Strange Children’ that speak vanity and falsehoods. As a King this plea can be for his deliverance from ‘Strange Children’ for the welfare of his people, or as a Father this plea can also refer to the welfare of his own ‘Children’. David knew that ‘Strange Children’ that do not think or know the way of the Lord, could contaminate his people and/or his ‘Children’.

So it should be with you “Pastors” today in reference to your own ‘Family’. You should always be aware of who your ‘Children’ are keeping company with, where they go, who they speak with on the telephone, their cell phone, ipad, and/or the internet. This way you can make sure that your Sons will grow up planted both in body and mind, and that your Daughters will grow up in prominence as polished cornerstones of a palace that are strong in the Lord.

‘Strange’ in the Dictionary is:
- ‘Foreign’ - which means born in, belonging to, or characteristic of another place or country.
- ‘Heathen’ - which means of or relating to heathens, their religions, or their customs.
- ‘Alien’ - which means belonging or relating to another person, place, or thing; or differing in nature or character typically to the point of incompatibility.
‘Strange’ in Hebrew is:

OT:5236 nekar (nay-kawr’) from OT:5234; foreign, or (concretely) a foreigner, or (abstractly) heathendom:
KJV - alien, strange (-er).
OT:5234 nakar (naw-kar’); a primitive root; properly, to scrutinize, i.e. look intently at; hence (with recognition implied), to acknowledge, be acquainted with, care for, respect, revere, or (with suspicion implied), to disregard, ignore, be strange toward, reject, resign, dissimulate (as if ignorant or disowning):
KJV - acknowledge, could, deliver, discern, dissemble, estrange, feignself to be another, know, take knowledge (notice), perceive, regard, (have) respect, behave (makeself) strange (-ly).

‘Strange’ in Greek is:

NT:3581 xenos (xen'-os); apparently a primary word; foreign (literally, alien, or figuratively, novel); by implication a guest or (vice-versa) entertainer:
KJV - host, strange (-r).

Ps 144:11-12  Ps 144:7-8
11 Rid me, and deliver me (defend me, preserve me, save me) from the hand of strange (foreign, heathen, alien, or those that behave strangely) children, whose mouth speaketh vanity (evil, guile, idolatry, uselessness, deception), and their right hand is a right hand of falsehood (deceit and lies):
12 That our sons may be as plants (planted, fixed and fastened) grown up (in body and mind) in their youth; that our daughters may be as corner stones (in the sense of prominence), polished after the similitude (structure, model and likeness) of a palace:

L. THE UNMARRIED:
The following are Scriptures that are pertinent to you “Pastors” that are ‘Unmarried’. It is important for you to know and to follow these ‘Words from the Lord’ in order for you to keep YOUSELF and/or YOUR ‘House in Order’.

1. VIRGINS:
Here Paul addresses the issue of those that are ‘Virgins’. Although he seems to be addressing Women who are ‘Virgins’, these judgments (opinions, counsel and/or advice) of Paul can also address those Men that are ‘Virgins’.

1 Cor 7:25
25 Now concerning virgins I have no commandment (authority) of the Lord: yet I give my judgment (opinion, counsel, advice), as one that hath obtained mercy of the Lord to be faithful.

If you Marry you do not Sin, however, Paul would remind you that you will have trouble in the flesh.

1 Cor 7:28
28 But and if thou marry, thou hast not sinned; and if a virgin marry, she hath not sinned. Nevertheless such shall have trouble (pressure, affliction, anguish, burdens, persecutions, tribulation) in the flesh (human nature with its frailties): but I spare you.
Here Paul states that there is a difference between a ‘Virgin’ and a Married person. The ‘Unmarried’ usually care for the things of the Lord and the Married usually care for the things of the World and how they can please their Spouse. Of course in reality I have found out through experience that today many of those that are ‘Virgins’ are also caught up in the things of the World in order to attract a potential Husband or Wife! There are even many young Christians today that attend Christian events just hoping to find a future Spouse. So in this day and age, I believe there is really little difference in both situations.

1 Cor 7:34-37
34 There is difference also between a wife and a virgin. The unmarried woman careth for the things of the Lord, that she may be holy both in body and in spirit: but she that is married careth for the things of the world, how she may please her husband.
35 And this I speak for your own profit (advantage, benefit or good); not that I may cast a snare upon you, but for that which is comely (noble or honorable), and that ye may attend upon the Lord without distraction.

Paul’s advice for “Virgins” is if you cannot contain your sexual needs, it is better for you to get Married rather than give in to Sin. However, those that can control their sexual needs and wish to remain ‘Virgins’ do well (morally).

36 But if any man think that he behaveth himself uncomely (unseemly or act unbecoming) toward his virgin (maiden), if she pass the flower of her age (the bloom or prime of her youth), and need so require (be married), let him do what he will (desires), he sinneth not: let them marry.
37 Nevertheless he that standeth stedfast in his heart, having no necessity (need), but hath power over his own will, and hath so decreed in his heart that he will keep (maintain or preserve) his virgin (virginity), doeth well (morally).

2. DIVORCED:
Here Jesus states that in Marriage two have become ‘one flesh’, and what God has joined together no human being should put asunder (separate or get ‘Divorced’).

Matt 19:3-9  Mark 10:2-9
3 The Pharisees also came unto him (Jesus), tempting him, and saying unto him, Is it lawful for a man to put away (Divorce) his wife for every (any or all) cause?
4 And he answered and said unto them, Have ye not read, that he which made them at the beginning made them male and female.
5 And said, For this cause shall a man leave father and mother, and shall cleave (join or stick like glue) to his wife: and they twain (two) shall be one flesh?
6 Wherefore they are no more twain (two), but one flesh. What therefore God hath joined together, let not man (a human being) put asunder (separate).

Moses however did give a writing of ‘Divorcement’, but this was not God’s original plan. (Matthew 5:31-32)

7 They say unto him, Why did Moses then command to give a writing of divorcement, and to put her away (Divorce)?
8 He (Jesus) saith unto them, Moses because of the hardness of your hearts (destitution of Spiritual perception) suffered (allowed or permitted) you to put away (Divorce) your wives: but from the beginning it was not so.

Jesus said that no one should get a ‘Divorce’ except it be for ‘fornication’ - which is harlotry including adultery and incest. If you do ‘Divorce’ (except for ‘fornication’), and Remarry, you commit adultery. (Mark 10:11-12)

9 And I say unto you, Whosoever shall put away (Divorce) his wife, except it be for fornication (harlotry including adultery and incest), and shall marry another, committeth adultery: and whoso marrieth her which is put away doth commit adultery.

Paul states that the Lord Commands you to not depart or separate from your Spouse, however if you do depart, you should remain ‘Unmarried’ or be reconciled to your Spouse.

1 Cor 7:10-11
10 And unto the married I command, yet not I, but the Lord, Let not the wife depart (separate) from her husband:
11 But and if she depart (separate), let her remain unmarried, or be reconciled (to change mutually) to her husband: and let not the husband put away (send away or leave) his wife.

Of course, there are many that have already broken these Commandments of the Lord and the only answer to this problem is that they need to get themselves right with God. This can be accomplished by confessing these Sins and to ask God for His forgiveness - which He is always willing to give! Remember David and Bath-sheba! (2 Samuel 11:3-27 Acts 13:22 1 John 1:9)

3. WIDOWS AND WIDOWERS:
This section is intended for the use of those “Pastors” that are ‘Widows’ or ‘Widowers’ or that have ‘Widows’ and/or ‘Widowers’ in their Churches.

According to the Dictionary:
- A ‘Widow’ is a woman who has lost her husband by death and usually has not remarried.
- A ‘Widower’ is a man who has lost his wife by death and usually has not remarried.

Although the Bible seems to concentrate mainly on ‘Widows’ and not on ‘Widowers’, I believe that some of these Scriptures about ‘Widows’ could also very well relate to ‘Widowers’; especially to those men that may be elderly and/or invalids and cannot take care of themselves.

‘Widows’ have a ‘special relationship’ with the Lord. (Isaiah 54:4-5  Psalms 146:9  James 1:27) Here the Scripture states that God is a judge or advocate of the ‘Widows’. (1 John 2:1)

Ps 68:5
5 A father of the fatherless, and a judge (‘advocate’ - which is one that pleads the cause of another; one that defends or maintains a cause of; and/or one that supports or promotes the interests of another) of the widows, is God in his holy habitation.
In the following Scriptures Paul recommends how ‘Widows’ are to continue their walk with God and how we are to treat ‘Widows’ within the Church. ‘Widows’ are to be honored and respected by the Church. This can include having them become involved in ‘Church Leadership’ as well as hiring some on Staff.

1 Tim 5:3-16
3 Honour (prize, value, and to ‘revere’ - which means to honor and admire profoundly and respectfully) **widows that are widows indeed** (truly or really).

Here it is recommended that ‘Widows’ and elderly ‘Widowers’ should be taken care of and maintained by their Children, Grandchildren or nearest relatives. By doing this, the Children, Grandchildren or relatives will show their respect and support of those in their ‘Family’. Also, in this way the ‘Family’ will help to give back and to repay their Parents, which is good and acceptable to God.

4 But if any widow have children or nephews (Grandchildren or relations), **let them learn first to shew piety** (show respect and support) **at home, and to requite** (give back or repay) **their parents: for that is good and acceptable before God**.

Those ‘Widows’ and ‘Widowers’ that are alone or by themselves, need to ‘Trust in God’ and to continue in supplications and prayers night and day.

5 Now she that is a widow indeed, and desolate (alone or by them-self), **trusteth** (expects, confides and hopes) **in God, and continueth in supplications** (petitions and requests) **and prayers night and day**.
6 But she that liveth in pleasure is dead while she liveth.

All these things need to be declared to ‘Widows’ and ‘Widowers’, so that they may remain blameless.

7 And these things give in charge (command, declare, transmit), **that they may be blameless** (unrebukeable or ‘inculpable’ - which means free from guilt).

If a ‘Family’ does not provide for their own ‘Widows’ and/or ‘Widowers’, they have denied the Faith and are considered worse than ‘unbelievers’.

8 But if any provide not for his own, and specially for those of his own house, he hath denied (contradicted, disavowed, rejected, and/or refused) **the faith** (the system of religious Gospel truth itself), **and is worse than an infidel** (disbelieving, without Christian Faith, an unbeliever).

The following are some guidelines for the Church to use for the taking care of the ‘Widows’.

Paul recommends that the Church:
- Should not take in the ‘Widows’ that are under 60 years of age.
- Should take in only those ‘Widows’ that have been the wife of one man.
- That is well reported of for good works (acts or deeds).
- That has brought up children.
- That has provided hospitality for strangers.
That has washed the feet of Saints.
That has helped the afflicted.
And have diligently followed after every good work.

9 Let not a widow be taken into the number under threescore (sixty) years old, having been the wife of one man.
10 Well reported of for good works (acts or deeds); if she have brought up children, if she have lodged strangers, if she have washed the saints' feet, if she have relieved (helped) the afflicted, if she have diligently followed every good work.

Paul recommends that the Church should refuse to take in or take care of the younger ‘Widows’ because:

- They may soon start to wander from the Faith and will want to remarry.
- Some may even go so far as to leave the Faith.
- If they do, they will learn to become idle or lazy.
- They will wander from house to house.
- They will become tattlers or annoyingly talkative.
- They will become busybodies and meddlesome!
- Speaking things which they ought not to.

11 But the younger widows refuse: for when they have begun to wax wanton against (to become ‘voluptuous’ against - which means full of delight or pleasure to the senses which is conducive to or arising from sensuous or sensual gratification) Christ, they will marry;
12 Having damnation (condemnation), because they have cast off their first faith.
13 And withal they learn to be idle (inactive, unemployed, lazy, useless), wandering about from house to house; and not only idle, but tattlers (a ‘garrulous’ person - which is pointlessly or annoyingly talkative) also and busybodies (meddlesome and ‘officious’ - which is volunteering one’s services where they are neither asked nor needed), speaking things which they ought not.

Therefore, Paul advises all the younger ‘Widows’ to stay in the Faith, and go ahead and remarry, bear Children, and to ‘Guide their House’.

14 I will therefore that the younger women marry, bear children, guide the house (to rule the Family), give none occasion to the adversary (enemy) to speak reproachfully (with slander or with ‘vituperation’ - which is sustained and bitter railing and condemnation).
15 For some are already turned aside after Satan.

Here Paul reminds the Christians that if they have relatives that are ‘Widows’ they are to take care of them and not the Church so that the Church can take care of all those ‘Widows’ that really need it.

16 If any man or woman that believeth have widows, let them relieve (help) them, and let not the church be charged (weighed down or burdened); that it may relieve (help) them that are widows indeed.

‘Widows’ and ‘Widowers’ that are Christians are free to Marry again, but should only Marry in the Lord, which means to only Marry other Christians. However, Paul suggests here that ‘Widows’ might
be happier if they remain ‘Unmarried’.

1 Cor 7:39-40
39 The wife is bound by the law as long as her husband liveth; but if her husband be dead, she is at liberty (free) to be married to whom she will; only in (denoting a fixed position) the Lord.
40 But she is happier if she so abide (stays or remains), after my judgment (opinion, resolve, counsel, or advice): and I think also that I have the Spirit (and mind) of God.

M. FINALLY:
If none of the Scriptures in this Section on “Family Matters” have helped you with keeping your ‘Family and House in Order’, perhaps you need to go back to the basic principles of how you have built your ‘House and Family’ and who or what you have based it upon!
The following Scriptures contain some general information and suggestions that may further help you as “Pastors” to keep your ‘Family and House in Order’.

As a “Pastor”, it is important to always include the Lord in all your plans and decisions about your Marriage, ‘Family’ and Home.

Ps 127:1
1 Except (unless) the LORD build the house (Family or Household), they labour in vain that build it:…

As a “Pastor” it is important to “Fear the Lord” and to walk in His ways in order to find true happiness in your ‘Family’ and Household. (Deuteronomy 10:12 Proverbs 9:10 Job 28:28)
(Read the Tract “The Spirit of The Fear of the Lord” written by Timothy II)

Ps 103:13
13 Like as a father pitieth (loves, has compassion, and shows mercy on) his children, so the LORD pitieth (loves, has compassion, and shows mercy on) them that fear him.
Ps 128:1-4
1 Blessed is every one that feareth (morally or is reverent or afraid or fearful of) the LORD; that walketh (grows, leads and pursues) in his ways (as a course of life or mode of action).
2 For thou shalt eat the labour (work) of thine hands: happy (Blessed) shalt thou be, and it shall be well with thee.
3 Thy wife shall be as a fruitful vine by the sides of thine house (Family): thy children like olive plants round about thy table.
4 Behold, that thus shall the man be blessed that feareth (morally or is reverent or afraid or fearful of) the LORD.
Ps 128:6
6 Yea, thou shalt see thy children's children (Grandchildren), and peace upon Israel.

Here Jesus states that if you will hear His sayings and DO THEM, you will be as a wise man that has built your House upon THE ROCK (JESUS)! (1 Corinthians 10:4)

Matt 7:24
24 Therefore whosoever heareth these sayings of mine, and doeth them, I will liken him unto a
**X. PERSONAL CONDUCT:**

As a “Pastor” your ‘Personal Conduct’ is of the utmost importance not only to you and to your ‘Family’, but also to your ‘Flock’. Whether you like it or not you are an example to your ‘Flock’, and you are under their scrutiny every day in every way! (1 Timothy 4:12  James 5:10  1 Peter 2:20-21)

The following are some of the various areas of ‘Personal Conduct’ that have been included for your perusal as a “Pastor” in order to help you keep from Falling or becoming ‘Out of Order’!

Even though you may feel as a “Pastor” that you are free or have a right to participate in some of the following habits, the question you must ask yourself is do you have the right to participate in these habits if it will lead your Brethren astray? (1 Corinthians 8:9)

Remember, as a ‘Leader’ you must always set an example for those that are under your ‘Leadership’. When it comes to your ‘Personal Conduct’ you need to always ask yourself how will my actions affect those that are under my Leadership?

**A. PROPER SPEECH (LANGUAGE):**

As a “Pastor” it is important for you to always use and maintain ‘Proper Speech’. Whether you are at home, at work, in the office or behind the pulpit, it is imperative to train your mouth, tongue and lips to use the ‘Proper Speech’ that will edify those that hear you.

To maintain ‘Proper Speech’, be sure that it is acceptable in the sight of the Lord.

**Ps 19:14**

14 *Let the words of my mouth, and the meditation of my heart, be acceptable* (delightful, desired, favorable and pleasurable) *in thy sight, O LORD, my strength* (rock), *and my redeemer.*

‘Speech’ is always ‘Proper’ when and if you ‘Praise the Lord’.

**Ps 34:1**

1 *I will bless the LORD at all times: his praise* (8416 a hymn or ‘laudation’ - which is the act of praising) *shall continually* (daily, constantly, always, perpetually) *be in my mouth.*

**Ps 71:8**

8 *Let my mouth be filled with thy praise* (8416 a hymn or ‘laudation’ - which is the act of praising) *and with thy honour* (beauty, glory, majesty) *all the day* (from sunrise to sunset and/or from one
Ps 109:30
30 I will greatly praise (3034 to confess, give thanks, to revere or worship with extended hands) the LORD with my mouth; yea, I will praise (1984 to make, boast, celebrate, commend, glorify, sing to) him among the multitude.

Notice here that ‘Praise’ is considered to be a ‘sacrifice’ and the fruit of our lips.

Heb 13:15
15 By him (Jesus) therefore let us offer the sacrifice of praise (133 a thank offering) to God continually (daily, always, wholly, thoroughly, in every way), that is, the fruit of our lips giving thanks to his name.

‘Speech’ is always ‘Proper’ when you speak with ‘Wisdom’ (wisely and/or skillfully), and if you talk of judgment (justly).

Ps 37:30
30 The mouth of the righteous speaketh wisdom (wisely or skillfully), and his tongue talketh of (uses words or speaks) judgment (or ‘justly’ - whether favorable or unfavorable; or with ‘discretion’ - which is the quality of being discreet, especially cautious reserve in speech).

‘Speech’ is always ‘Proper’ whenever you speak of the ‘Righteousness’ of God and of His ‘Salvation’.

Ps 71:15
15 My mouth shall shew forth (speak or declare) thy righteousness (6666 rightness, justice, virtue, or ‘rectitude’ - which is moral integrity, the quality or state of being straight or correct in judgment or procedure) and thy salvation (help, deliverance and victory) all the day (from sunrise to sunset and/or from one sunset to the next); for I know not the numbers thereof.

Some “Pastors” and ‘Christian Leaders’ seem to have a tendency to talk too much! They seem as though they are the only ones who have a clear knowledge of the Scriptures or that the Holy Spirit only speaks to them. (2 Peter 1:20-21)
If you have this problem, why not do what the Bible says and learn how to keep quiet at times and hold your peace!

Prov 17:27-28
27 He that hath knowledge spareth (restrains, holds back or refrains) his words: and a man of understanding (discretion, reason and skillfulness) is of an excellent spirit.
28 Even a fool, when he holdeth his peace (leaves off speaking, is quiet, keeps silent, speaks not a word), is counted wise: and he that shutteth his lips (speech, talk, vain words or ‘prating’ - which is to talk long and idly) is esteemed a man of understanding.

Prov 13:3
3 He that keepeth (guards or watches) his mouth keepeth (preserves, protects or takes heed to) his life: but he that openeth wide his lips (speech, talk, vain words or ‘prating’ - which is to talk long and idly) shall have destruction (ruin).

Prov 21:23
23 Whoso keepeth (guards or watches) his mouth and his tongue keepeth (preserves, protects or takes heed to) his soul from troubles (adversity, affliction, anguish, distress and tribulation).

Wherever you are and whatever you are doing, be cautious in what you say, and do not Sin with your tongue.

Ps 39:1
1 I said, I will take heed to (guard and protect) my ways, that I sin not with my tongue: I will keep (guard and protect) my mouth with a bridle (muzzle), while the wicked is before me.

James 1:26
26 If any man among you seem to be religious, and bridleth (curbs) not his tongue, but deceiveth his own heart, this man's religion (worshipping) is vain.

Remember, what comes out of the mouth of a person can defile the person.

Matt 15:11
11 Not that which goeth into the mouth defileth (profanes, pollutes or makes unclean) a man; but that which cometh out of the mouth, this defileth (profanes, pollutes or makes unclean) a man.

Therefore let no corrupt communication come out of your mouth.

Eph 4:29
29 Let no corrupt (rotten, worthless, or bad) communication (logos) proceed out of your mouth, but that which is good to the use of edifying (building up or confirming), that it may minister grace unto the hearers.

Remember also, Never praise yourself!

Prov 27:2
2 Let another man praise thee, and not thine own mouth; a stranger, and not thine own lips.

It is of utmost importance not to use flattery (smooth talk) when speaking to others, neither speak proudly. (Proverbs 26:28)

Ps 12:3
3 The LORD shall cut off all flattering (smooth) lips, and the tongue that speaketh proud things:

It is actually better to rebuke a person than to use flattery (smooth talk).

Prov 28:23
23 He that rebuketh (convicts, convinces, pleads, reasons or reproves) a man afterwards shall find more favour than he that flattereth (smooth talks) with the tongue.

As a “Pastor”, always speak the Truth from your Heart. Do not become a backbiter (a tale-bearer or slanderer) with your tongue.
Ps 15:1-3
1 LORD, who shall abide (assemble, dwell, inhabit, remain, stand in awe) in thy tabernacle (dwelling place)? who shall dwell (reside or permanently stay) in thy holy hill (mountain)?
2 He that walketh uprightly (with integrity, in truth, without spot or blemish), and worketh righteousness, and speaketh the truth in his heart.
3 He that backbiteth (a tale-bearer or slanderer) not with his tongue, nor doeth evil to his neighbor (or kindred), nor taketh up a reproach (disgrace or shame) against his neighbor (associates, brother, companion, friend, husband or lover).

Do not speak with lying lips, or with a deceitful or idle tongue.

Ps 120:2
2 Deliver my soul, O LORD, from lying (untruths, a sham, falsehoods, and vain) lips, and from a deceitful (treacherous, idle or a slack or slothful) tongue.

As a “Pastor” always try to speak with a ‘wholesome’ voice which has a healing effect. Avoid speaking with ‘perverseness’ - which is with distortion or viciousness and can cause a fracture or hurt in the Spirit of those that hear you.

Prov 15:4
4 A wholesome tongue (a healing or ‘placid’ tongue - which is one serenely free of interruption or disturbance) is a tree of life: but perverseness (distortion or viciousness) therein is a breach (fracture, affliction, a bruise, hurt or vexation) in the spirit.

Remember - Death and Life is in the power of the tongue!

Prov 18:21
21 Death and life are in the power of the tongue: and they that love it shall eat the fruit thereof (reward).

James 3:8-10
8 But the tongue can no man tame; it is an unruly (unstable or ‘inconstant’ - which means it is likely to change frequently without apparent or cogent reason) evil, full of deadly poison (venom as emitted by serpents).
9 Therewith bless we God, even the Father; and therewith curse we men, which are made after the similitude (likeness) of God.
10 Out of the same mouth proceedeth blessing and cursing. My brethren, these things ought not so to be.

If you truly love life and want to see ‘good days’, then refrain from speaking evil and/or guile.

(Ephesians 6:11)

1 Peter 3:10
10 For he that will love life, and see good days, let him refrain (stop, restrain, quit, desist, cease, leave and let come to an end) his tongue from evil, and his lips that they speak no guile (deceit, trickery or ‘wile’ - which is a trick or stratagem intended to ensnare or deceive):
There are some charismatic “Pastors” that may appear as though they are outstanding Preachers and/or Teachers because they speak loudly, have a good personality, or tell good jokes, etc. Actually however, some of them do not speak in an ‘orderly manner’ or with ‘orderly thoughts’ and their Sermons and/or Preaching tend to wander all over the place. The results of what these “Pastors” Teach and/or Preach will only be retained for a short period of time. In this case it is not the fault of the ‘Flock’ that they do not retain the message but it is the fault of the “Pastor”.

The following Scripture states that as a “Pastor”, you need to Teach and/or Preach with the ‘sweetness of your lips’. What this means is that when you Preach and/or Teach you need to do so with the capacity of ‘orderly thoughts’ and ‘orderly procedures’. When you do this you will increase the learning of the ‘Flock’.

In other words, know your subject matter and put it in an ‘orderly pattern’ both in ‘thought’ and in ‘procedure’.

**Prov 16:21**

21 The wise (intelligent, skillful and cunning) in heart shall be called prudent (understanding, eloquent, able to discern, able to perceive, able to teach and to instruct): and the sweetness (which in Hebrew is ‘pleasantness of discourse’; and ‘discourse’ - is the capacity of orderly thought or procedure) of the lips increaseth learning.

As a former College Professor, I learned a long time ago that the delivery of a message can be just as important as the message itself!

**B. ALCOHOL:**

Although ‘Alcohol’ has already been mentioned under the Section on “Pastors/Priests”, I feel the Holy Spirit would have me to reemphasize it again. This is because of the great need for “Pastors” to beware of this type of ‘Personal Conduct’ as it can sneak up on you even if you only use ‘Alcohol’ occasionally.

I remember when I was a Head Football Coach, even after I had received Jesus and had been attending Church for many years; I was still actively drinking ‘Alcohol’. During this time, I attended a Football Coaching Clinic and was having a beer with another Coach. I started talking to this Coach about Jesus thinking I might lead him to the Lord. However, when I asked him if he would like to accept Jesus, he stated that since he and I were doing the same things, he didn’t see any difference in us or our life style so why did he need Jesus? I couldn’t answer him because I knew he was right. If I as a Christian could Coach football, drink beer and do everything that other Coaches do, then what difference does it make if you have Jesus?

The similitude for you as a “Pastor” is this, if you feel free to drink ‘Alcohol’, then think about how this could affect your ‘Flock’ if they have the same attitude as this Coach!

(Read the Tract “Alcohol-Booze” written by Timothy II)

Here the Bible states that it is not good to eat, drink wine or do anything that may cause your Brother to stumble.

**Rom 14:21**
21 It is good neither to eat flesh (meat), nor to drink wine, nor any thing whereby thy brother stumbleth (is tripped up, or stubs his toe, is beat upon or dashed), or is offended, or is made weak.

The Bible also states that you can be deceived by drinking ‘Alcohol’. “Alcohol’ can not only deceive or mock you, but it can also make your mouth become a mocker and a scoffer to others.

Prov 20:1
1 Wine (fermented) is a mocker (or a scorners; it makes mouths to scoff and mock; it also means to have in ‘derision’ - which is the use of ridicule or scorn to show contempt), strong drink is raging (causes great commotion or tumult): and whosoever is deceived (caused to go astray, to err, to morally transgress, to Sin through ignorance, to wander) thereby is not wise.

Here the Bible states that all Rulers should not drink ‘Alcohol’ because it can cause you to forget God’s Commandments and pervert your judgment.

Prov 31:4-5
4 It is not for kings, O Lemuel, it is not for kings to drink wine; nor for princes (rulers) strong drink:
5 Lest they drink, and forget (become oblivious to, from want of memory or attention) the law, and pervert (to cause to turn aside or away from what is good or true or morally right) the judgment (justice or cause) of any of the afflicted (depressed, miserable or troubled).

The Bible states that as a “Pastor” you are not to keep company with or to associate with those that are ‘Drunkards’, especially if they are called a ‘brother in Christ’. This is because these people are headed for ruin and you may become entangled or joined in with them if you do. (2 Corinthians 6:14) This of course is not referring to an ‘Alcoholic’ Rehab Ministry.

Prov 23:20-21
20 Be not among winebibbers (drunkards or those that are ‘intoxicated’ - which is the condition of being drunk); among riotous eaters of (to be loose morally, vile and ‘a glutton’ - which is one given habitually to greedy and voracious eating and drinking) flesh;
21 For the drunkard (winebibber) and the glutton (to be loose morally, vile and ‘a glutton’ - which is one given habitually to greedy and voracious eating and drinking) shall come to poverty (to ruin): and drowsiness shall clothe a man with rags.

1 Cor 5:11
11 But now I have written unto you not to keep company (associate with), if any man that is called a brother be a fornicator (whoremonger), or covetous (eager for gain), or an idolater, or a railer (a ‘reviler’ - which is to subject to verbal abuse and/or to use abusive language), or a drunkard, or an extortioner (‘rapacious’ - which means excessively grasping or covetous or living on prey); with such an one no not to eat.

According to the Bible, ‘Drunkenness’ is not a disease it is a ‘work of the flesh’.

Gal 5:19
19 Now the works of the flesh are manifest (apparent), which are these:…

Gal 5:21
21 ... **drunkenness, revellings** (carousing, rioting), and such like: of the which I tell you before, as I have also told you in time past, that they which do such things shall not inherit (be an heir to or obtain by inheritance) **the kingdom of God**.

Be not deceived, if a person persists in being a ‘Drunkard’, the Bible states that he/she will **not** inherit the ‘Kingdom of God’! This is why God allowed me to go to ‘Outer Darkness’ - to get off the Booze and to remind others of their **possible eternal destiny**!

**1 Cor 6:9-10**

9 **Know ye not that the unrighteous** (unjust, wicked and treacherous) **shall not inherit** (be an heir to or obtain by inheritance) **the kingdom of God**? Be not deceived (do not error, go astray, roam from the truth or be out of the way): **neither** …

10 … **drunkards, nor revilers** (which are those subject to verbal abuse and/or to use abusive language), **nor extortioners** (‘rapacious’ - which means excessively grasping or covetous or living on prey), **shall inherit** (be an heir to or obtain by inheritance) **the kingdom of God**.

**C. DRUGS:**

The term ‘Drugs’ in this section is basically concerning the recreational use and/or illegal use of ‘Drugs’, not the use of prescription medicine that you may be required to use for medical purposes. However, even the overuse or abuse of taking prescription ‘Drugs’ could be considered a part of this section.

Believe it or not, I have found that since the ‘hippy days’ there are still many Christians including a few “Pastors” that still smoke marijuana (‘pot’). This will continue to get worse in America as ‘pot’ is being legalized in some states.

Although the term ‘Drugs’ in English does not appear in the Scriptures, the following words can and do sometimes mean ‘Drugs’ in the Greek.

‘Drugs’ in the Greek is ‘pharmakeia’ which is where the word ‘pharmacy’ comes from:

**NT:5331 pharmakeia** (far-mak-i'-ah); from NT:5332; **medication** ("pharmacy"), i.e. (by extension) **magic** (literally or figuratively):

KJV - sorcery, witchcraft.

**NT:5332 pharmakeus** (far-mak-yoos'); from pharmakon (a **drug**, i.e. **spell-giving potion**); a druggist ("pharmacist") or **poisoner**, i.e. (by extension) **a magician**:

KJV - sorcerer.

**NT:5333 pharmakos** (far-mak-os'); the same as NT:5332:

KJV - sorcerer.

*Notice that the word for ‘Drugs’ in the Greek ‘pharmakeia’ can also mean ‘Magic’, ‘Sorcery’, ‘Witchcraft’, a ‘Spell-Giving Potion’ and a ‘Poisoner’.

This means that many that use and/or abuse ‘Drugs’ can lead to:

- Involvement with the Occult.
- Involvement in Magic.
- Involvement in Sorcery.
• Involvement in Witchcraft.
• Involvement in spell-giving Potions.
• Can become Demon possessed.
• And many that become addicted will end up dead by overdosing or Poisoning themselves.
• And those that sell ‘Drugs’ will end up as those that Poison others.

According to the Bible, just like ‘Drunkenness’, the abuse of using ‘Drugs’ is not a disease but is a ‘work of the flesh’.

Gal 5:19-21
19 Now the works of the flesh are manifest (apparent), which are these:…
20 Idolatry, witchcraft (5331 ‘pharmakeia’),…

If one persists in the abuse of using ‘Drugs’, the Bible states that he/she will not inherit the ‘Kingdom of God’!

21 … and such like: of the which I tell you before, as I have also told you in time past, that they which do such things shall not inherit (be an heir to or obtain by inheritance) the kingdom of God.

Although the use of ‘Drugs’ is a ‘work of the flesh’, it can also lead to ‘Demonic Possession’. Through much experience in working in this area, I have found that many ‘Drug’ abusers have opened themselves up to ‘Demonic Possession’ and/or ‘Seducing spirits’. (1 Timothy 4:1)
(Read the Study Guide “Demons” written by Timothy II)

The following are the definitions in the Dictionary which help to tie the meanings together of the words that are related to ‘Drugs’ and ‘Drug Abuse’:

**Drugs:**
1. A substance used as a medication or in the preparation of medication.
3. A substance other than food intended to affect the structure or function of the body.
4. Something and often an illegal substance that causes addiction, habituation, or a marked change in consciousness.

**Magic:**
1. The use of means (as charms or spells) believed to have supernatural power over natural forces.
2. Magic rites or ‘incantations’ - which is a use of spells or verbal charms spoken or sung as a part of a ritual of magic; also a written or recited formula of words designed to produce a particular effect.
3. An extraordinary power or influence seemingly from a supernatural source.
4. Something that seems to cast a spell.

**Pharmacy:**
1. Late Latin pharmacia administration of drugs, from Greek pharmakeia, from pharmakeuein to administer drugs, from pharmakon magic charm, poison, drug.
2. The art, practice, or profession of preparing, preserving, compounding, and dispensing medical drugs.
3. A place where medicines are compounded or dispensed.

**Potion:**
1. A mixture of liquids such as liquor or medicine.

**Sorcery:**
1. The use of power gained from the assistance or control of evil spirits especially for divining.

**Witchcraft:**
1. The use of sorcery or magic.
2. Communication with the Devil or with a familiar spirit.
3. An irresistible influence or fascination.

The Good News about the problems which people may have with ‘Drug Addiction’, ‘Demon Possession’ and/or ‘Seducing spirits’, is that God can deliver you from them all! Over the years, I and the Timothy II Team have personally delivered many ‘Drug’ Addicts from being ‘Demon possessed’ and/or from ‘Seducing spirits’! (Luke 10:19-20  Mark 16:17)

(Read the Tract “Drugs” written by Timothy II)

**Matt 4:24**
24 And his fame went throughout all Syria: and they brought unto him all sick people that were taken with divers diseases and torments, and those which were possessed with devils (1139 demons), and those which were lunatick, and those that had the palsy; and he healed them.

**Matt 8:16**
When the even was come, they brought unto him (Jesus) many that were possessed with devils (1139 demons): and he cast out the spirits (4151 demons) with his word, and healed all that were sick:

**Acts 8:6-7**
6 And the people with one accord gave heed unto those things which Philip spake, hearing and seeing the miracles which he did.
7 For unclean spirits (4151 demons or demonic spirits), crying with loud voice, came out of many that were possessed with them: and many taken with palsies, and that were lame, were healed.

**D. SMOKING:**

‘Smoking’ is like any other bad habit or addiction, not only is it bad for your health, but your liberality in using it could cause your Brother or Sister to fall!

One time I was asked by a “Pastor” to come to his Church and evaluate some of the problems they were having in their Church Leadership. While there I noticed that the “Pastor” himself was standing outside the Church ‘Smoking’ a cigarette just before the Service. Needless to say there were many of his ‘Flock’ that was also ‘Smoking’ outside the Church. This freedom in bad habits by both the “Pastor” and the ‘Flock’ seemed to have led to a hostile Church environment.

After three days of observing and evaluating the Church Leadership, it was true that they were ‘out of order’ and there was a man and his wife that were obviously trying to take over the Church. The Leadership Meeting I attended was very vile and many of them accused each other of various problems.

After much prayer I along with a couple of our Team members that had accompanied me determined that since this whole Church was ‘out of order’, it was our recommendation that the couple that was trying to take over the Church should be exposed and asked to leave the Church. (Proverbs 26:20-26)

Also privately we told the “Pastor” that he needed to stop ‘Smoking’ as he was setting a bad example for his ‘Flock’. The Lord revealed to us that if he did not, the Lord would remove his ‘Candlestick’. (Revelation 2:5) After many months, we found out that this Church no longer existed and that the “Pastor” was no longer serving in the Ministry.
The Dictionary states that ‘Smoking’ means:
- To emit or exhale smoke.
- To emit excessive smoke.
- To inhale and exhale the fumes of burning plant material and especially tobacco.
- Especially to smoke tobacco habitually.
- To inhale and exhale the smoke of a cigarette.

The Temple of God:
Although the Bible does not mention cigarettes as such, there are many Scriptures that do concern us when it comes to things that are destructive to our bodies.
Some of these Scriptures are those that reveal to us that as Christians our bodies are actually the ‘Temple of God’ and the Holy Spirit of God dwells in us.

1 Cor 3:16-17
16 **Know ye not that ye are the temple** (the central sanctuary itself) **of God, and that the Spirit of God dwelleth** (occupies, resides or inhabits) **in you**?

According to the Scriptures, if any person defiles their ‘Temple’, him/her will God destroy.
In the Dictionary, to ‘Defile’ means to:
- To make unclean or impure.
- To corrupt the purity or perfection of.
- To violate the chastity of.
- To make physically unclean, especially with something unpleasant or contaminating.
- To violate the sanctity of.

It is easy to confirm that ‘Smoking’ actually does defile the body because we have scientific proof that ‘Smoking’ causes cancer.
The majority of ‘Smokers’ will eventually have to use an oxygen apparatus to help them to breathe and most will die early. I know this to be true as my own mother died this way!

17 **If any man** (any or whosoever) **defile** (5351 waste, shrivel or wither, spoil by any process, self corrupt or ruin) **the temple of God**, **him** (the same) **shall God destroy** (5351 waste, shrivel or wither, spoil or ruin); **for the temple of God is holy, which temple ye are**.

1 Cor 6:19-20
19 **What? know ye not that your body is the temple of the Holy Ghost which is in you, which ye have of God, and ye are not your own**?

Since we have been bought for a price, which is by the death of Jesus on the Cross, we are to glorify God in our bodies by not defiling our ‘Temple’.

20 **For ye are bought** (purchased and redeemed) **with a price** (of the highest degree): **therefore glorify** (honor) **God in your body, and in your spirit, which are God's**.

Idols:
According to the Dictionary, an ‘Idol’ is:
- A representation or symbol of an object of worship.
• A false god.
• A likeness of something.
• A form or appearance visible but without substance.
• An object of extreme devotion.
• A false conception.

When you use ‘Alcohol’, ‘Drugs’ or ‘Tobacco’, you make ‘Idols’ of these habits and/or addictions, and what agreement or accord do you as a “Pastor” have with ‘Idols’?

**2 Cor 6:16-17**
16 And what agreement (company or accord) hath the temple of God with idols? for ye are the temple of the living God; as God hath said, I will dwell in them, and walk in them; and I will be their God, and they shall be my people.

Therefore you as a “Pastor” should separate yourselves from the people who do these things and touch not the unclean things such as ‘Alcohol’, ‘Drugs’ or ‘Tobacco’!

17 Wherefore come out (depart, get out) from among them, and be ye separate (to limit, exclude, divide, sever), saith the Lord, and touch not the unclean (impure, foul, morally lewd, or demonic) thing; and I will receive you.

Leading People Astray:
Although the following Scriptures concern ‘Leading People Astray’ through the eating of things sacrificed to ‘Idols’, I believe the same holds true for the use of any habit or addiction that we might have, whereby we would ‘Lead People Astray’.

**1 Cor 8:4**
4 As concerning therefore the eating of those things that are offered in sacrifice unto idols, we know that an idol is nothing in the world, and that there is none other God but one.

**1 Cor 8:7**
7 Howbeit (nevertheless) there is not in every man that knowledge: for some with conscience (custom, usage or mutual habituation) of the idol unto this hour (day) eat it as a thing offered unto an idol; and their conscience (moral consciousness) being weak is defiled.

**1 Cor 8:9-13**
9 But take heed lest by any means this liberty (freedom) of yours become a stumblingblock (offence or occasion of apostasy) to them that are weak.
10 For if any man see thee which hast knowledge sit at meat in the idol’s temple, shall not the conscience (moral consciousness) of him which is weak be emboldened (built up) to eat those things which are offered to idols;
11 And through thy knowledge shall the weak brother perish (be fully destroyed), for whom Christ died?
12 But when ye sin so against the brethren, and wound their weak conscience (moral consciousness), ye sin against Christ.
13 Wherefore, if meat make my brother to offend (to be entrapped, to trip up, to stumble, to be enticed to Sin, or to be apostatized), I will eat no flesh while the world standeth, lest I make my brother to offend (to be entrapped, to trip up, to stumble, to be enticed to Sin, or to be apostatized).
Paul stated that to overcome the problem of ‘Leading People Astray’ he became all things to all men so that by all means some might be Saved!

1 Cor 9:22-23
22 To the weak became I as weak, that I might gain the weak: I am made all things to all men, that I might by all means save some.
23 And this I do for the gospel's sake, that I might be partaker thereof with you.

1 Cor 9:27
27 But I keep under (subdue the passions of) my body, and bring it into subjection (subdue or enslave it): lest that by any means, when I have preached to others, I myself should be a castaway (unapproved, rejected, worthless or reprobate).

Second Hand Smoke:
Another problem with ‘Smoking’ is that it has been proven that even ‘Second Hand Smoke’ can endanger other people around you when you do ‘Smoke’. Thereby you can be the cause of helping to destroy the ‘Temple’ of those around you. This is called ‘Passive Smoking’ and it is believed to also cause cancer.

The Dictionary states that ‘Passive Smoking’ is:
- The involuntary inhalation of tobacco smoke (as from another's cigarette) especially by a nonsmoker.

E. PORNOGRAPHY:
Although ‘Pornography’ has been around throughout history, it now seems to have enlarged and gained momentum with all the electronic, audio and video devices that people in most countries seem to have available to them.

‘Pornography’ in the Dictionary means the following:
- The depiction of erotic behavior (as in pictures or writing) intended to cause sexual excitement.
- Material (as books or a photograph) that depicts erotic behavior and is intended to cause sexual excitement.
- The depiction of acts in a sensational manner so as to arouse a quick intense emotional reaction.

Although the Scriptures do not use the term ‘Pornography’ in English, the following words in the Greek can and do sometimes mean indulging in ‘Pornography’.

NT:4202 porneia (por'-ni'-ah); from NT:4203; harlotry (including adultery and incest); figuratively, idolatry:
KJV - fornication.

NT:4203 porneuo (porn-yoo'-o); from NT:4204; to act the harlot, i.e. (literally) indulge unlawful lust (of either sex), or (figuratively) practise idolatry:
KJV - commit (fornication).

NT:4204 porne (por'-nay); feminine of NT:4205; a strumpet (or prostitute); figuratively, an idolater:
KJV - harlot, whore.

NT:4205 pornos (por'-nos); from pernemi (to sell; akin to the base of NT:4097); a (male) prostitute
(as venal), i.e. (by analogy) a debauchee (libertine):
KJV - fornicator, whoremonger.

*Notice - the Greek word ‘pornos’ besides meaning a ‘fornicator’ and ‘whoremonger’ can also mean ‘a debauchee’ and a ‘libertine’.

According to the Dictionary:
- A ‘fornicator’ is one that has intercourse with prostitutes!
- A ‘whoremonger’ is a man consorting with whores or given to ‘lechery’!
- ‘Lechery’ is inordinate indulgence in sexual activity!
- A ‘debauchee’ is one given to ‘debauchery’ and ‘debauchery’ is extreme indulgence in sensuality and/or seduction from virtue or duty!
- A ‘libertine’ is a freethinker especially in religious matters, and/or a person who is unrestrained by convention or morality; specifically one leading a ‘dissolute’ life!
- A ‘dissolute’ life is one lacking restraint; especially marked by indulgence in such things as drinking, promiscuous sex and other deemed vices that represent the dissolute and degrading aspects of human nature!

Here the word whoremonger is ‘pornos’ in the Greek which can and does mean those that indulge in ‘Pornography’. The Bible states that those that continue to indulge in ‘Pornography’ will not inherit the ‘Kingdom of God’! (James 1:14-15)

**Eph 5:5**
5 For this ye know, that no whoremonger (4205 - pornos), nor unclean person (impure or morally lewd), nor covetous man, who is an idolater, hath any inheritance (be an heir to or obtain by inheritance) in the kingdom of Christ and of God.

The Eyes:
The problem with indulging in ‘Pornography’ is that the things that we see with our ‘Eyes’ penetrate deep into our minds, hearts and souls and like a computer it remains there for a long time because it is hard to erase or delete.

The following Scripture is a reminder that even in Biblical times we are warned not to set any wicked things before our ‘Eyes’. We need to hate the work of those that wrongly practice these things and should not let these things catch or overtake us.

**Ps 101:3**
3 I will set no wicked (worthless, destructive, evil, naughty or ungodly) thing before mine eyes: I hate the work (doing or making) of them that turn aside (them that become derelict or wrongly practice); it shall not cleave (catch me by pursuit or overtake me) to me.

Just as Hell and destruction are never full, so are the ‘Eyes’ of man never satisfied.

**Prov 27:20**
20 Hell (Hades) and destruction are never full; so the eyes of man are never satisfied (never have
enough or never full).

The Lust of the Eyes:
According to the Bible the ‘Lust of the Eyes’ can often lead to adultery. (2 Peter 2:14)

To ‘Lust’ in the Dictionary is:
- A personal inclination.
- Usually intense or unbridled sexual desire.
- An intense longing.

To ‘Lust’ in the Greek is:

NT:1937 epithumeo (ep-ee-thoo-meh'-o); from NT:1909 and NT:2372; to set the heart upon, i.e. long for (rightfully or otherwise):
KJV - covet, desire, would fain, lust (after).
NT:1939 epithumia (ep-ee-thoo-mee'-ah); from NT:1937; a longing (especially for what is forbidden):
KJV - concupiscence (which is a strong desire; especially sexual desire), desire, lust (after).

Jesus stated that if you indulge in the ‘Lust of the Eyes’ you have already committed adultery in your heart.

Matt 5:27-28
27 Ye have heard that it was said by them of old time, Thou shalt not commit adultery:
28 But I say unto you, That whosoever looketh on a woman to lust (1937) after her hath committed adultery with her already in his heart.

Although the following Scripture may not actually mean if your ‘Eye’ offends you to literally pluck it out, however, it is a warning that the ‘Lust of the Eyes’ can lead you to Hell! (Matthew 6:22-23)

Matt 18:9  Mark 9:47
9 And if thine eye offend (entrap you, trips you up, causes you to stumble or entices you to sin) thee, pluck it out (release it, deliver it or rescue it), and cast it from thee; it is better for thee to enter into life with one eye, rather than having two eyes to be cast into hell (Gehenna) fire.

This ‘Lust of the Eyes’ is not of God the Father but is of the world.

1 John 2:16
16 For all that is in the world (including its inhabitants or literally or figuratively morally), the lust (1939) of the flesh, and the lust (1939 - longing for what is forbidden or ‘concupiscence’ - which is a strong desire; especially sexual desire) of the eyes, and the pride of life, is not of the Father, but is of the world (including its inhabitants or literally or figuratively morally).

David:
The following is the story about David who as a King still fell into Sin by succumbing to the ‘Lust of the Eyes’. He committed adultery after he watched Bath-sheba washing herself.
2 Sam 11:2
2 And it came to pass in an eveningtide (at dusk), that David arose from off his bed, and walked upon the roof of the king's house: and from the roof he saw a woman washing herself; and the woman was very beautiful to look upon.

2 Sam 11:4-5
4 And David sent messengers, and took her; and she came in unto him, and he lay with her;…

Aholah and Aholibah:
This story is about two sisters Aholah and Aholibah that committed whoredoms through the ‘Lust of the Eyes’. This is an important example in the Old Testament of how even women can become involved in ‘Pornography’.

Ezek 23:2-3
2 Son of man, there were two women, the daughters of one mother:
3 And they committed whoredoms in Egypt; they committed whoredoms in their youth;…

These two sisters are compared to and/or represent the two sister Kingdoms of Israel (or Samaria which is Aholah) and Judah (or Jerusalem which is Aholibah).

Ezek 23:4
4 And the names of them were Aholah the elder, and Aholibah her sister: and they were mine, and they bare sons and daughters. Thus were their names; Samaria is Aholah, and Jerusalem Aholibah.

Aholah played a harlot when she was led by doting (which in Hebrew means to breathe after or to love sensually) on her lovers.

Ezek 23:5-8
5 And Aholah played the harlot (committed adultery, fornication or whoredom continually) when she was mine; and she doted (which means to be lavish or excessive in one's attention, fondness, or affection) on her lovers, on the Assyrians her neighbours.
6 Which were clothed with blue, captains and rulers, all of them desirable young men, horsemen riding upon horses.
7 Thus she committed her whoredoms with them, with all them that were the chosen men of Assyria, and with all on whom she doted (to be lavish or excessive in one's attention, fondness, or affection): with all their idols she defiled herself.
8 Neither left she her whoredoms brought from Egypt: for in her youth they lay with her,…

The result was that the Lord delivered her into the hands of her lovers and they killed her.

Ezek 23:9-10
9 Wherefore I have delivered her into the hand of her lovers, into the hand of the Assyrians, upon whom she doted (to be lavish or excessive in one's attention, fondness, or affection).
10 These discovered (stripped her, or denuded or revealed) her nakedness: they took her sons and her daughters, and slew her with the sword: and she became famous among women; for they had executed judgment upon her.
Then her sister Aholibah committed more whoredoms than Aholah.

**Ezek 23:11-13**
11 *And when her sister Aholibah saw this, she was more corrupt in her inordinate love* (exceeding reasonable limits, disorderly or unregulated) than she, and in her whoredoms more than her sister in her whoredoms.
12 *She doted* (to be lavish or excessive in one's attention, fondness, or affection) upon the Assyrians her neighbours, captains and rulers clothed most gorgeously, horsemen riding upon horses, all of them desirable young men.
13 *Then I saw that she was defiled* (foul - especially in a moral sense, contaminated, polluted or unclean), *that they took both one* (the same) way.

Here Aholibah turned to ‘Pornography’ through the ‘Lust of the Eyes’ by looking at the images of men portrayed upon the wall.

**Ezek 23:14-18**
14 *And that she increased her whoredoms: for when she saw men pourtrayed upon the wall, the images of the Chaldeans pourtrayed with vermilion* (red ochre),
15 *Girded with girdles upon their loins, exceeding in dyed attire upon their heads, all of them princes to look to, after the manner of the Babylonians of Chaldea, the land of their nativity:*
16 *And as soon as she saw them with her eyes, she doted* (to be lavish or excessive in one's attention, fondness, or affection) upon them, and sent messengers unto them into Chaldea.
17 *And the Babylonians came to her into the bed of love, and they defiled* (foul - especially in a moral sense, contaminated, polluted or unclean) *her with their whoredom, and she was polluted* (foul - especially in a moral sense, contaminated, polluted or unclean) *with them, and her mind was alienated* (3363 - to sever oneself, to abandon, or to depart) from them.
18 *So she discovered her whoredoms, and discovered her nakedness: then my mind was alienated* (5361 - to feel aversion) from her, like as my mind was alienated (3363 - to sever oneself, to abandon, or to depart) from her sister.

Aholibah however, continued to multiply her whoredoms in that she called to remembrance when she played a harlot and continued to dote (to be lavish or excessive in one's attention, fondness, or affection) on her illicit lovers. This is an example of how once you get caught up in ‘Pornography’, through the ‘Lust of the Eyes’, it remains in your mind for a long period of time!

**Ezek 23:19-21**
19 *Yet she multiplied her whoredoms, in calling to remembrance the days of her youth, wherein she had played the harlot* (committed adultery, fornication or whoredom continually) in the land of Egypt.
20 *For she doted* (breathed after or loved sensually) upon their paramours (illicit lovers), *whose flesh is as the flesh of asses, and whose issue is like the issue of horses.*
21 *Thus thou calledst to remembrance the lewdness of thy youth,…*

**F. GAMBLING AND ACCEPTING GIFTS (BRIBES):**
As a “Pastor”, even if you do not have much money or income, do not ‘Gamble’ or accept ‘Gifts as Bribes’ in order to gain income because you know it is morally wrong.
As an example of ‘Gambling’, I know of a young Christian Husband and Father who continually bet on the lottery. He always hoped that by winning the lottery he would be better able to take care of his ‘Family’. All the while he did this he never advanced financially at work and he lost several jobs. Finally, after several years of this lifestyle, his Wife suggested that instead of betting on the lottery to try to advance financially why not pray about it and ‘Tithe’ more regularly to the Church. This they did, and since that time God has Blessed them so much that as a Contractor, people are always calling him for work without him even having to advertise!

According to the Dictionary ‘Gambling’ is:
- To play a game for money or property.
- To bet on an uncertain outcome.
- To stake something on a contingency or take a chance.
- To risk by gambling.

According to the Dictionary, a ‘Bribe’ is:
- Money or favor given or promised in order to influence the judgment or conduct of a person in a position of trust.
- Something that serves to induce or influence.

Accepting a ‘Gift as a Bribe’ is:
- When you know that someone is giving you a ‘Gift’ with strings attached to it.
- When you know that you will eventually have to give a favor in return to that person giving you the ‘Gift’.
- This type of ‘Gift’ actually becomes a ‘Bribe’!

To try to get gain by ‘Gambling’ or accepting ‘Gifts as a Bribe’, is actually considered ‘Greed’ and/or Covetousness.

According to the Dictionary ‘Greed’ is:
- A selfish and excessive desire for more of something (such as money) than is needed.

**Prov 15:27**
27 **He that is greedy** (covetous) of gain (lucre) troubleth (troubles or afflicts) **his own house** (Family); but **he that hateth gifts** (bribes) **shall live** (keep alive, be made alive, be promised life, be repaired, be restored, be revived, be made whole).

**Prov 11:29**
29 **He that troubleth** (troubles or afflicts) **his own house** (Family) **shall inherit the wind** (only the wind and anger):…

As a “Pastor” it is up to you to provide for those of your own Household. When first starting out as a New “Pastor”, don’t be surprised if it is necessary for you to hold an extra part time or full time job.

There is nothing wrong with holding an extra job as a New “Pastor” and usually after much work and prayer the Lord will eventually Bless you with an increase in your income through the growth of your Church.
1 Tim 5:8
8 But if any provide not for his own, and specially for those of his own house (Household), he hath denied the faith, and is worse than an infidel (a disbeliever, without Christian Faith, an unbeliever).

G. PRIDE:
Becoming ‘Prideful’ seems to be one of the biggest problem areas that can overcome “Pastors”. This is because as the Leader of a ‘Flock’, many people become enraptured with you and put you up on a pedestal thereby causing ‘Pride’ to creep up on you without you even knowing it. Remember this, if ‘Pride’ was the cause of the fall of Satan, it too can certainly creep up on anyone in Leadership and cause you to fall! (Isaiah 14:12-16)

1. WHAT IS PRIDE?

The Dictionary states that ‘Pride’ is:
- The quality or state of being proud.
- Inordinate (or exceeding reasonable limits of) self-esteem.
- Proud or disdainful (which is a feeling of contempt for someone or something regarded as unworthy or inferior) behavior or treatment.
- Ostentatious display (which means marked by or fond of conspicuous or vainglorious and sometimes pretentious display).

‘Pride in Hebrew is:

**OT:1346 ga`avah** (gah-av-aw'); from OT:1342; arrogance or majesty; by implication, (concretely) ornament:
KJV - excellency, haughtiness, highness, pride, proudly, swelling.

**OT:1347 ga'own** (gaw-ohn'); from OT:1342; the same as OT:1346:
KJV - arrogancy, excellency (-lent), majesty, pomp, pride, proud, swelling.

**OT:2087 zadown** (zaw-done'); from OT:2102; arrogance:
KJV - presumptuously, pride, proud (man).

**OT:1362 gabahh** (gaw-bawh'); from OT:1361; lofty (literally or figuratively): -high, proud.

**OT:1363 gobahh** (go'-bah); from OT:1361; elation, grandeur, arrogance: -excellency, haughty, height, high, loftiness, pride.

**OT:1343 ge'eh** (gay-eh'); from OT:1342; lofty; figuratively, arrogant:
KJV - proud.

**OT:7342 rachab** (raw-khawb'); from OT:7337; roomy, in any (or every) direction, literally or figuratively:
KJV - broad, large, at liberty, proud, wide.

**OT:7311 ruwm** (room); a primitive root; to be high actively, to rise or raise (in various applications, literally or figuratively):
KJV - bring up, exalt (self), extol, give, go up, haughty, heave (up), (be, lift up on, make on, set up on, too) high (-er, one), hold up, levy, lift (-er) up, (be) lofty, (X a-) loud, mount up, offer (up), presumptuously, (be) promote (-ion), proud, set up, tall (-er), take (away, off, up), breed worms.

2. PRIDE IN THE OLD TESTAMENT:
The following are just a few of the Scriptures in the Old Testament that reveal the meaning of ‘Pride’ and its results.

One of the Seven things that the Lord hates and is an abomination to Him is a ‘Proud Look’.

Prov 6:16-17
16 These six things doth the LORD hate (personally): yea, seven are an abomination (disgusting morally) unto him:
17 A proud look (outward appearance), a lying tongue, and hands that shed innocent blood.

A ‘High or Proud Look’ and a ‘Proud Heart’ are Sins!

Prov 21:4
4 An high look (outward appearance), and a proud heart (feelings, the will and the intellect), and the plowing (cultivating or tilling) of the wicked, is sin.

Everyone that is ‘Proud in Heart’ is an abomination to the Lord and he/she shall not go unpunished.

Prov 16:5
5 Every one that is proud in heart (feelings, the will and the intellect) is an abomination to the LORD: though hand join in hand (though he join forces with others), he shall not be unpunished.

When ‘Pride’ comes, it brings shame which will manifest in confusion, dishonor, and disgrace.

Prov 11:2
2 When pride cometh, then cometh shame (confusion, dishonor, reproach and ‘ignominy’ - which is deep personal humiliation and disgrace and/or disgraceful or dishonorable conduct, quality, or action):…

By ‘Pride’ comes contention which will manifest in quarrels, debate and strife.

Prov 13:10
10 Only by pride cometh contention (a quarrel, debate or strife):…

Prov 28:25
25 He that is of a proud heart (mind, soul, will) stirreth up strife:…

‘Pride’ eventually leads to destruction which will manifest in a fracture, affliction and breach in your Ministry; and a ‘Haughty spirit’ leads to a fall.

Prov 16:18
18 Pride goeth before destruction (a fracture, affliction or breach), and an haughty spirit before a fall (tottering or ruin).

A persons ‘Pride’ will bring him/her down low, which eventually leads them to sink into humiliation and depression.
Prov 29:23
23 A man’s (persons) pride (1346) shall bring him low (to depress, to sink, to humiliate, to abase or to put down):…

Remember this: The Lord will destroy the House or Church of the ‘Proud’!

Prov 15:25
25 The LORD will destroy (tear away, pluck up or root out) the house (or Temple) of the proud (1343):…

3. PRIDE IN THE NEW TESTAMENT:
The following is the meaning of ‘Pride’ in the New Testament.

‘Pride’ in the Greek is:

NT:5243 huperephania (hoop-er-ay-fan-ee'-ah); from NT:5244; haughtiness:
KJV - pride.

NT:5244 huperephanos (hoop-er-ay'-fan-os); from NT:5228 and NT:5316; appearing above others (conspicuous), i.e. (figuratively) haughty:
KJV - proud.

NT:5252 huperphroneo (hoop-er-fron-eh'-o); from NT:5228 and NT:5426; to esteem oneself overmuch, i.e. be vain or arrogant:
KJV - think more highly.

NT:212 alazoneia (al-ad-zon-i'-a); from NT:213; braggadocio (which is empty boasting and/or arrogant pretension), i.e. (by implication) self-confidence:
KJV - boasting, pride.

NT:213 alazon (al-ad-zone'); from ale (vagrancy); braggart:
KJV - boaster.

NT:5187 tuphoo (toof-o'-o); from a derivative of NT:5188; to envelop with smoke, i.e. (figuratively) to inflate with self-conceit:
KJV - high-minded, be lifted up with pride, be proud.

The following are just a few of the Scriptures in the New Testament that reveal the meaning of ‘Pride’ and its results.

‘Pride’ comes from within a person and out of the Heart proceeds the fruit thereof. All these evil things come from within and defile the person.

Mark 7:21-23
21 For from within, out of the heart (thoughts, feelings and mind) of men, proceed evil thoughts, adulteries, fornications, murders.
22 Thefts, covetousness, wickedness, deceit, lasciviousness, an evil eye, blasphemy, pride (5243), foolishness:
23 All these evil things come from within, and defile (profane, pollute and cause to be unclean) the man (human being).
With the strength of His Arm, the Lord has and will scatter the ‘Proud’ in the imagination of his/her own Heart!

Luke 1:51
51 **He** (The Lord) **hath shewed strength with his arm; he hath scattered** (routed or dispersed) **the proud** (5244) **in the imagination of their hearts** (the deep thoughts of their minds).

For those “Pastors” that have become ‘Proud’ and that do not like to retain God in their knowledge, (acknowledging or recognition); God will give them over to a reprobate or worthless mind. In other words those “Pastors” that have become ‘boasters’ and take all the credit for their success, will find themselves doing those things which are not becoming or fit!

Rom 1:28
28 **And even as they did not like to retain God in their knowledge** (recognition, acknowledging or acknowledgement), **God gave them over to a reprobate** (unapproved, rejected, worthless and castaway) **mind, to do those things which are not convenient** (not becoming or fit);

Rom 1:30
30 **Backbiters** (slanderers), **haters of God, spiteful, proud** (5244), **boasters** (213), **inventors** (contrivers) **of evil things, disobedient to parents**.

As a “Pastor”, it is of utmost importance to not think more ‘Highly’ of yourselves than you ought to; but rather think soberly on how God has Blessed you in the measure of Faith that He has given unto you!

Rom 12:3
3 **For I say, through the grace given unto me, to every man that is among you, not to think of himself more highly** (5252) **than he ought to think; but to think soberly** (of a sound mind), **according as God hath dealt to every man the measure** (a limited portion) **of faith**.

In the following Scriptures Paul relates to how ‘Servants’ should act. He then states that if any teach otherwise, and consent not to the words of Jesus Christ and to the ‘Doctrine of Godliness’, they are ‘Proud’ and know nothing. (1Timothy 6:1-2)

1 Tim 6:3-4
3 **If any man teach otherwise, and consent not to wholesome** (sound, uncorrupt and true in Doctrine) **words, even the words of our Lord Jesus Christ, and to the doctrine which is according to godliness** (or Holiness);
4 **He is proud** (5187), **knowing nothing, but doting** (harping upon) **about questions and strifes of words** (disputing about trifles), **whereof cometh envy** (jealousy), **strife** (quarreling, wrangling, contentions, debate), **railings** (vilification especially against God, blasphemy), **evil surmising** (suspicions),

As a “Pastor” it is important to avoid getting caught up in the ‘Lust of the Flesh’, the ‘Lust of the Eyes’ and the ‘Pride of Life’, because all these are not of God the Father but are of the world. (1 John 2:15
2 Peter 1:3-4  Philippians 2:15)

1 John 2:16
16 For all that is in the world, the lust of the flesh, and the lust of the eyes, and the pride of life, is not of the Father, but is of the world.

Remember that God resists the ‘Proud’ but will always give grace to the Humble!

James 4:6 1 Peter 5:5
6 But he giveth more grace. Wherefore he saith, God resisteth the proud (5244), but giveth grace (benefit, favor, joy, and pleasure) unto the humble.

(For more information on this topic, read the Tract on “Pride” written by Timothy II)

XI. FALSE PASTORS:

It is very difficult for me to write in this “Book” that there are ‘False’ “Pastors” in our World today. However, by the leading of the Holy Spirit, I have been urged to do so in order to possibly Save those “Pastors” that might have fallen into this group or that are headed in that direction.

A. CURSED PASTORS:
According to the Bible ‘False’ “Pastors” are ‘Cursed’ (Accursed) and they may not even realize it.

In the Dictionary ‘Cursed’ or ‘Accursed’ means:
- Being under or deserving a curse.
- Being under as if under a curse.

In Hebrew ‘Cursed’ or ‘Accursed’ means:
- To bitterly curse.
- Or to ‘execrate’ - which is to declare to be evil or detestable.
- A net or a doomed object.
- Utterly destroyed or utter destruction.
- Extermination

In Greek ‘Cursed’ or ‘Accursed’ means:
- To be ‘execrable’ - which means deserving to be ‘execrated’; or very bad.
- To be ‘imprecated’ - which means to invoke evil on, or to utter curses.
- To be accused, banned or excommunicated.
- ‘Anathema’ - which according to the Dictionary is one that is cursed by Ecclesiastical authority; someone or something intensely disliked or loathed; a ban or curse solemnly pronounced by Ecclesiastical authority and accompanied by excommunication; or the denunciation of something as accursed.
- NT:331 ‘Anathema’ (an-ath'-em-ah); from NT:394; a (religious) ban or (concretely) excommunicated (thing or person):
  KJV - accused, anathema, curse, great. (1 Corinthians 16:22)

1. THOSE THAT DO THE WORK OF THE LORD DECEITFULLY:
“Pastors” are ‘Cursed’ that do the ‘Work of the Lord Deceitfully’. 
To do the ‘Work of the Lord Deceitfully’ in Hebrew means that they do it:

- With ‘Remissness’ - which is to do it with negligence in the performance of work or duty; or showing neglect or inattention.
- With ‘Treachery’ - which is to deceive; or violation of allegiance or of faith and confidence; also an act of ‘perfidy’ - which is the quality or state of being faithless or disloyal.
- ‘Falsely’ - which is that which is not genuine, intentionally untrue, adjusted or made so as to deceive, intended or tending to mislead; also not true, not faithful or loyal, lacking naturalness or sincerity, or based on mistaken ideas.
- With ‘Guile’ - which is with deceitful cunning.
- ‘Idly’ - which is lacking worth or basis; shiftless or lazy.
- With ‘Slack’ - which is not using due diligence, care, or dispatch; also characterized by slowness, sluggishness, or lack of energy; lacking in usual or normal steadiness; lacking in completeness, finish, or perfection.
- ‘Slothfully’ - which is disinclination to action or labor; Spiritual apathy and inactivity (which is the deadly Sin of sloth).

**Jer 48:10**
10 Cursed (779 - to bitterly curse or to ‘execrate’ - which is to declare to be evil or detestable) be he that doeth the work (Ministry, Office, or business) of the LORD deceitfully (with remissness, treachery, falsely, with guile, idly, with slack and/or slothfully),…

2. THOSE THAT TRUST IN MAN AND THE FLESH:
“Pastors” that put their ‘Trust in Man and the Flesh’ and whose heart has departed from the Lord, are those that are Cursed. (Isaiah 31:1-3 Psalms 20:7-8)

**Jer 17:5**
5 Thus saith the LORD; Cursed (779 - to bitterly curse or to ‘execrate’ - which is to declare to be evil or detestable) be the man (the person or everyone) that trusteth (puts their confidence or hope) in man, and maketh flesh his arm (strength, power or help), and whose heart departeth (rebels, revolts, turns away or withdraws) from the LORD.

3. THOSE THAT PREACH ANOTHER GOSPEL:
The “Pastors” that ‘Preach another Gospel’ rather than that which is ‘The Holy Bible’ are ‘Cursed’.

**Gal 1:8-9**
8 But though we, or an angel (aggelos) from heaven, preach any other gospel (2097 to announce good news, Evangelize, especially the Gospel) unto you than that which we have preached (2097) unto you, let him be accursed (331 - accused, cursed, excommunicated or anathema).
9 As we said before, so say I now again, If any man preach any other gospel (2097 to announce good news, Evangelize, especially the Gospel) unto you than that ye have received, let him be accursed (331 - accused, cursed, excommunicated or anathema).

4. THOSE THAT ARE FOLLOWERS OF THE LAW:
The Bible states that “Pastors” that ‘Follow the Law’ are ‘Cursed’ because once you ‘Follow the Law’, you must continue in all the things that are written in the Law and do them! (James 2:10)
Gal 3:10
10 For as many as are of the works of the law are under the curse (2671 - imprecation and/or execration): for it is written, Cursed (1944 - imprecated and/or execrable) is every one that continueth not in all things (everything, every way, the whole, always, daily, and thoroughly) which are written in the book of the law to do them.

Today there is no need for you as a “Pastor” to ‘Follow the Law’ (other than the Law of Christ) because Christ has redeemed us from the ‘Curse’ of the Law by being made a ‘Curse’ for us by hanging on ‘The Cross’! (Romans 8:1-4)

Gal 3:13
13 Christ hath redeemed (ransomed or rescued) us from the curse (2671 - imprecation and/or execration) of the law, being made a curse (2671 - imprecation and/or execration) for us: for it is written, Cursed (1944 - imprecated and/or execrable) is every one that hangeth on a tree:

5. THE RESULTS:
Unless they Repent, ‘The Results’ of those “Pastors” that are ‘Cursed’ will unfortunately be:

Matt 25:41-46
41 Then shall he (the Son of Man) say also unto them on the left hand, Depart from me, ye cursed (2672 - execrated or doomed), into everlasting fire (Gehenna), prepared for the devil and his angels:
42 For I was an hungred, and ye gave me no meat (nothing to eat): I was thirsty, and ye gave me no drink:
43 I was a stranger (foreigner, alien or a guest), and ye took me not in: naked, and ye clothed me not: sick, and in prison, and ye visited me not.
44 Then shall they also answer him, saying, Lord, when saw we thee an hungred, or athirst, or a stranger (foreigner, alien or a guest), or naked, or sick, or in prison, and did not minister (attended, wait upon, hosted or befriended) unto thee?
45 Then shall he answer them, saying, Verily I say unto you, Inasmuch as ye did it not to one of the least of these, ye did it not to me.
46 And these shall go away into everlasting punishment: but the righteous (Holy and Just) into life eternal.

B. FALSE GIFTS:
Many ‘False’ “Pastors” often claim to have ‘special Gifts’ from the Lord. You can recognize them by their boasting of themselves because of having these so-called ‘special Gifts’. However, what they actually have are ‘False Gifts’.
These ‘False’ “Pastors” are like clouds and wind without rain and unless they Repent, they are headed for ‘Outer Darkness’. (Jude 12-13 2 Peter 2:17)

Prov 25:14
14 Whoso boasteth himself (to make a show, to be clamorously foolish, to rave, and/or commends himself) of a false (an untruth, a sham, a lying) gift is like clouds and wind without rain.

I have personally seen a ‘False’ “Pastor” that ‘pretended’ to have the ‘Gifts of Healing’. (1 Corinthians 12:9 12:30) When I was at a “Pastors” Conference, a group of “Pastors” had gathered around a person
to lay hands on him and ‘anoint’ him with oil in order to receive a Healing. (James 5:14)

While all the “Pastors” were praying with their eyes closed, this ‘False’ “Pastor” just ran around the group putting his hand in their midst pretending that he too was laying on hands. He did this a couple of times and after the prayers were over and the person was actually Healed, he too jumped up and down like he was a part of this Healing from the Lord.

Because I was observing this from a distance, I knew right away through the Holy Spirit that this ‘Pastor” was a ‘phony!'

What will happen to these ‘False’ “Pastors” that pretend to have ‘special Gifts’ from the Lord? According to the Bible they shall not enter into the Kingdom of Heaven!

Matt 7:21-23
21 Not every one that saith unto me, Lord, Lord, shall enter into the kingdom of heaven (eternity); but he that doeth the will of my Father which is in heaven.

When standing before the Lord, these ‘False” “Pastors” will try to defend themselves by saying to the Lord that they have moved in the ‘Gifts’ in His Name!

22 Many (plenty) will say to me in that day, Lord, Lord, have we not prophesied (foretold events, spoke under inspiration, exercised the Prophetic Office) in thy name? and in thy name have cast out devils (demons)? and in thy name done many wonderful works (‘dunamis’ - which means miraculous power, mighty deeds, worker of miracles, or mighty wonderful work)?

But Jesus will tell them “I NEVER KNEW YOU”!

23 And then will I profess unto them, I never knew you: depart from me, ye that work iniquity (wickedness, transgression and unrighteousness).

C. THE GREAT IMITATORS:
There will always be ‘imitators” of “Pastors” in the Ministry just as Judas was an ‘imitator’ as a part of Jesus’ Ministry!

Acts 1:17
17 For he (Judas) was numbered (counted) with us, and had obtained (received) part of this ministry (1248 - ‘diakonia”).

It is no surprise that there are ‘imitators’ of “Pastors” since Satan himself or his ministers can be transformed (disguised) as the ‘Ministers of Righteousness’.

2 Cor 11:14-15
14 And no marvel (wonder); for Satan himself is transformed (disguised) into an angel (Pastor or messenger) of light.
15 Therefore it is no great thing if his ministers (1249) also be transformed (disguised) as the ministers (1249) of righteousness; whose end shall be according to their works.

D. THE FALLEN AWAY:
The Holy Spirit has impressed upon this author to mention to those of you “Pastors” who are reading this “Book” that there are some of you that are on the verge of ‘Falling Away’. If this includes you, you need to know that it is time for you to ‘Turn’ and ‘Repent’ from your situation before it is too late! Regardless of what you may have been taught in Seminary or in Bible School, and even though you may have tasted of the ‘Heavenly Gift’ and have been partakers of the Holy Spirit, the Bible teaches that if you have ‘Fallen Away’ you need to ‘Turn’ and ‘Repent’ while there is still time; or you may end up in ‘Outer Darkness’ just as I did! (Read the Tract and Study Guide on “Outer Darkness” written by Timothy II)

Do not trust in someone else’s word for your guarantee that because you are a “Pastor” you are going to Heaven no matter what you do. I was taught in Church that I too was Saved no matter what I did; however, after continually drinking Alcohol and not Serving the Lord during my many years in Church, I ended up in ‘Outer Darkness’.

Fortunately for me God gave me another chance and delivered me from spending ‘Eternity in Hell’. I believe God Saved me so that I could warn those of you who may have ‘Fallen Away’, and to remind you that you could end up in Eternal Damnation if you DO NOT REPENT!

Even though you may have previously read these Scriptures many times, listen to these Scriptures NOW with your ‘Spiritual Ears’!

He that has ears to hear, let him hear!

He that hath an ear, let him hear what the Spirit saith unto the “Aggelos” (Pastors) of the Churches!

According to the Scriptures, even if you as a “Pastor” may have received or done the following prior to your ‘Falling Away’, you need to ‘Turn and Repent’ before it is impossible to do so.
• Once been enlightened or made to see.
• Have tasted or experienced the Heavenly (Dorea) Gift.
• Have been made a partaker or partner of the Holy Ghost.
• Have tasted or experienced the good (Rhema) Word of God.
• And have tasted or experienced the (Dunamis) powers of the world to come.

Heb 6:4-6
4 For it is impossible (not possible) for those who were once (one time) enlightened (given light or made to see), and have tasted (or experienced) of the heavenly gift (‘dorea’ - a present, a sacrifice, or a ‘gratuity’ - which is something given voluntarily or beyond obligation, usually for some service), and were made partakers (participants, sharers, associates, and partners) of the Holy Ghost, 5 And have tasted (eaten or experienced) the good word (‘rhema’ or utterance) of God, and the powers (‘dunamis’ - which means miraculous power, ability, mighty deeds, worker of miracles, and mighty wonderful works) of the world to come.

Here the Bible gives the reasons why, if you as a “Pastor” who represented Jesus, completely ‘Falls Away’ or commits Apostasy, it is impossible for you to be renewed or restored again to repentance.
The reasons are because you will have re-crucified Jesus and put Him to an open shame, making Him a public example and to be looked upon by ‘unbelievers’ as having an evil reputation! Therefore, a “Pastor” that has completely ‘Fallen Away’, will cause many ‘unbelievers’ to not accept Jesus as their Lord and Savior! (Matthew 23:13)

6 If they shall fall away (fall aside, ‘apostatize’ - which is to commit ‘apostasy’ - which means to revolt, or renunciation of a religious faith, or abandonment of a previous loyalty), to renew (or restore) them again unto repentance (reversal or compunction for guilt including reformation); seeing they crucify (re-crucify) to themselves the Son of God afresh, and put him to an open shame (to make a public example or to expose to ‘infamy’ - which is the state of being infamous, or of an evil reputation brought about by something grossly criminal, shocking, or brutal).

Here in Hebrews is a similitude of “Pastors” that have not ‘Fallen Away’. They are represented as those that are on ‘good ground’, and as ‘husbandmen’ they till the soil so that as it receives the rain it will produce ‘fruit’ that is fit or appropriate for them by whom it is dressed (or tilled).

These “Pastors” will receive a bountiful Blessing from God. (Matthew 13:8 13:23)

Heb 6:7-8
7 For the earth which drinketh in the rain that cometh oft (often or frequently) upon it, and bringeth forth herbs (‘herbage’ - which is herbaceous vegetation (as grass) especially when used for grazing) meet (fit or appropriate) for them by whom it is dressed (tilled), receiveth blessing (bountifully) from God:

Here those “Pastors” that have ‘Fallen Away’ are represented as those on ‘bad ground’ and they have brought forth thorns and briars which are worthless and whose end is to be burned. (Matthew 13:7, 22)

8 But that which beareth (brings forth or carries forth) thorns and briers is rejected (unapproved, castaway, reprobate, and worthless literally and/or morally), and is nigh unto cursing (to bitterly curse or ‘execration’ - which is to declare to be evil or detestable); whose end is to be burned.

PRE - CONCLUSION:
In the ‘Pre - Conclusion’ of this “Book”, I offer to you the “Pastor” these final analytical and possibly controversial ‘thoughts’.

Most of you realize (and rightfully so), that you need to be ‘accountable’ to someone in order to help you to maintain proper balance in all of your many and often difficult duties and decisions that you must make in your ‘Office’ as a “Pastor”.

Even though many of you may be under the ‘authority’ of a ‘Bishop’ or possibly under the Leadership of a ‘denomination’, I believe this type of ‘authority’ consists of basically being over you in what are the ‘Physical Matters’ of the Church.

I believe that God has ordained His “Messenger” (Apostolos) to maintain ‘Spiritual Authority’ over you His “Messenger” (Aggelos) in the ‘Spiritual Matters’ of the Church.
This does not mean that the “Messenger” (Apostolos) has ‘Physical Authority’ over you or your Church; you as the “Messenger” (Aggelos) of God are directly responsible to God for your Church. (Revelation 2 & 3)

Since God has ordained His “Messenger” (Apostolos) to be responsible for the ‘Spiritual Authority’ over you, this person has been given to you in order to help lead, guide, advise and counsel you in all ‘Spiritual Matters’ of the Church. This in turn will help to complete the work of the ‘Five Fold Ministry’ which is for the perfecting of the Saints, for the work of the Ministry, and for the edifying of the “Body of Christ”. (Ephesians 4:11-16)

I beseech you therefore my Brethren to receive this ‘Word of Edification’! (2 Corinthians 10:8 13:10)

To ‘Edify’ in the Dictionary means:
- To instruct or improve Spiritually.
- To instruct and improve, especially in moral and religious knowledge.
- To uplift, enlighten and inform.

To ‘Edify’ in the Greek means:
- To build up and/or to confirm.

This ‘Word of Exhortation’ is that I pray that you will come in contact with, recognize, and will receive in the Lord, those in the “Body of Christ” that God has Called to have ‘Spiritual Authority’ over you. (3 John 1:5-11)

Heb 13:7  
7 **Remember** (be mindful, make mention of) **them which have the rule over** (command with official authority) **you, who have spoken unto you the word of God: whose faith follow, considering the end** (results) **of their conversation** (conduct, or way of life).

Heb 13:17  
17 **Obey** (have confidence in, trust, and yield to) **them that have the rule over** (command with official authority) **you, and submit** (yield and surrender) **yourselves: for they watch** (keep awake or are sleepless) **for your souls, as they that must give account, that they may do it with joy, and not with grief: for that is unprofitable** (gain-less or ‘pernicious’ - which means exceedingly harmful) **for you**.

Remember, according to the Bible, today’s “Messenger” (Apostolos) that has ‘Spiritual Authority’ over you the “Messenger” (Aggelos) has been ordained by God as first in the Church (the “Body of Christ”!)

1 Cor 12:28  
28 **And God hath set** (ordained) **some in the church, first** (firstly in time, place, order or importance) **apostles** (apostolos), **secondarily prophets, thirdly teachers, after that miracles, then gifts of healings, helps, governments, diversities of tongues**.

Eph 4:8  
8 **Wherefore he saith, When he ascended up on high, he led captivity captive, and gave gifts (Doma) unto men**.

Eph 4:11  
11 **And he gave some, apostles** (apostolos); **and some, prophets; and some, evangelists; and some,**
pastors and teachers:

Finally my Brethren: Know this! God will send the “Messenger” (Apostolos) to you if He hasn’t already! You will recognize the person by their ‘Spiritual Authority’ that God will reveal to you if you are open to receive him!

Heb 13:22-25
22 And I beseech (‘implore’ - which is to call upon in supplication or to call or pray for earnestly) you, brethren, suffer (allow) the word of exhortation (comfort or ‘imploration’ - which is appeal, entreaty, petition, plea and ‘supplication’ - which is to make a humble entreaty especially to pray to God to ask for earnestly and humbly): for I have written a letter unto you in few words.
23 Know ye that our brother Timothy is set at liberty (released or set free); with whom, if he come shortly, I will see you.
24 Salute (to enfold in the arms, to embrace, to welcome, and to greet) all them that have the rule over (to lead or command with Official Authority over) you, and all the saints....
25 Grace be with you all. Amen.

(For more Information, Read the Study Guide “Authority, Accountability, Affiliation” written by Timothy II)

CONCLUSION:

Dear “Pastor”:

In Conclusion, I pray that this “Book” has helped to confirm in you that Jesus Christ has personally Called you as a “Pastor” through His ‘Doma Gifts’; and that after much prayer and self introspection the contents of this “Book” has encouraged you and helped you to become more determined to fulfill this Office to the best of your abilities.

Remember this, God has not Called very many into Christian Leadership:

• That are wise men or women that have unusual learning, judgment or insight according to the flesh.
• That are mighty, powerful or strong.
• That are noble and are well born or high in rank.

1 Cor 1:26-29
26 For ye see your calling, brethren, how that not many wise men (men of unusual learning, judgment, or insight) after (according to) the flesh, not many mighty (powerful or strong), not many noble (well born or high in rank), are called:

Therefore, God does not necessarily Call many of the most qualified, the best students, the most literate, the best orators, the most charismatic nor the best looking to be His ‘Leaders’.

Instead God has chosen:

• The foolish things of the world to confound and to shame and dishonor the wise.
• The weak and feeble things of the world to confound and to shame and dishonor the things which are mighty and powerful.
• The base things of the world which are of low birth and of common origin.
• The things which are despised, least esteemed and contemptible.
• The things which are nothing to make void, to render useless and without effect the things that are.
• So that no flesh or human being should glory in His Presence!

27 But God hath chosen the foolish things of the world to confound (shame and dishonor) the wise; and God hath chosen the weak (without strength or more feeble) things of the world to confound (shame and dishonor) the things which are mighty (boisterous, mightier or more powerful);

28 And base things (‘ignoble’ - which is of low birth or common origin) of the world, and things which are despised (least esteemed and contemptible), hath God chosen, yea, and things which are not (nothing), to bring to nought (make void, render useless and without effect) things that are:

29 That no flesh (human being) should glory (boast) in his presence.

As a “Pastor”, I encourage you to be like Paul and do not let anybody or anything move you. Neither count your life valuable to yourself, but finish your course with joy. Let the Ministry (Office) which you have received from the Lord Jesus be a witness of the Gospel of the Grace of God. (Ephesians 4:8 4:11)

Acts 20:24
24 But none (not even one man, woman or thing) of these things (thoughts, topics, motives or reasoning’s) move me, neither count I my life dear (valuable, honored, esteemed or reputable) unto myself, so that I might finish my course (race or career) with joy, and the ministry (Office), which I have received of the Lord Jesus, to testify the gospel of the grace of God.

For those of you whose ministry has become like a light-bulb that has been flickering and dimming for a while, I pray that this “Book” has caused a new excitement and burning within your soul, and that you are once again ready to take the bull by the horns and rejoin the fight and earnestly contend for the Faith.

Jude 3
3 Beloved, when I gave all diligence to write unto you of the common (shared) salvation, it was needful for me to write unto you, and exhort (implore, beseech, comfort, and entreat - which is to plead with especially in order to persuade) you that ye should earnestly contend for (to struggle for, to compete for a prize, to contend with an adversary, to fight, labor fervently, and/or strive for) the faith which was once (for all) delivered (entrusted, committed) unto the saints.

For those of you that may have become gray-haired (or have no hair) and you might feel that you are coming to the conclusion of your work as a “Pastor”; after examining yourself, I hope you have been able to say that you have fought a good fight, and finished your course, and kept the Faith? If not Pray and ask God to do the following: (Psalms 71:9  71:18  92:13-14)

2 Tim 4:6-8
6 For I am now ready to be offered, and the time of my departure is at hand.
7 I have fought (to struggle, to labor fervently, to compete for a prize, and/or to contend with an
adversary) **a good fight, I have finished my course** (race or career), **I have kept the faith** (the moral conviction of religious truth or the truthfulness of God, especially reliance upon Christ for Salvation):

No matter what your age, are you ready to receive your ‘Crown of Righteousness’? (James 1:12 Revelation 2:10) Are you looking forward to (and Love) Jesus’ soon appearing? (1 Peter 5:4)

8 **Henceforth there is laid up** (reserved) for me a crown of righteousness, which the Lord, the righteous (Just and Holy) judge, shall give me at that day: and not to me only, but unto all them also that love his appearing.

Remember, through bad times and good times, God will not forget your work and labor of Love.

**Heb 6:10**
10 **For God is not unrighteous** (unjust) to forget your work (toil as an effort or occupation) and labour of love (‘agape’ - feast of charity, affection, or ‘benevolence’ - which is a disposition to do good or acts of kindness), **which ye have shewed** (shown forth) **toward his name, in that ye have ministered to the saints, and do minister**.

In the meantime, the Prayer of Timothy II for all “Pastors” throughout the world is:

- That God will make you perfect and thoroughly complete in every good work to do His Will. (Colossians 1:9)
- That God will repair, adjust and restore you if necessary by working in you that which is well pleasing to Him through His Son Jesus Christ.

**Heb 13:20-21**
20 **Now the God of peace** (quietness and rest), **that brought again from the dead our Lord Jesus, that great** (Mighty) shepherd (Pastor) **of the sheep, through the blood of the everlasting** (Eternal) **covenant** (Testament).
21 **Make you perfect** (to complete thoroughly, to repair or adjust or restore, or to make you perfectly joined together), **in every good work to do his will, working in you that which is well-pleasing in his sight, through Jesus Christ; to whom be glory forever and ever. Amen**.

AMEN!

TIMOTHY II
BIBLIOGRAPHY

ACKNOWLEDGMENT:

Text:
The Holy Bible
Authorized (King James) Version
Produced By:
The National Bible Press - Philadelphia
Copyright 1944, National Publishing Company

Comments:
This text has been used as the source for all Scriptures. Some verses of Scripture have been shortened or used in partial form. This is to strengthen their importance to the subject matter; not to change their meaning nor meant to be taken out of the context in which they are written.

Text:
Webster's New American Dictionary
Produced By:
Copyright 1965, By Books, Inc.

Text:
Merriam-Webster's Dictionary for PC's.

Text:
Vine's Expository Dictionary of New Testament Words
By:
W.E. Vine, M.A.
MacDonald Publishing Company
McLean, Virginia 22101

Comments:
These Dictionaries are used to help clarify our understanding of what certain words mean in today's English language.

Text:
Strong’s Exhaustive Concordance of the Bible
By:
James Strong, S.T.D., LL.D.
Riverside Book and Bible House
Iowa Falls, Iowa 50126

Text:
PC Study Bible
Matthew Henry’s Commentary

Comments:
These texts have been used to further clarify the understanding of the Scriptures as related to their Greek and Hebrew meanings.

Text:
Introduction to psychology
By:
Arno F. Wittig Ph.D.  Professor of Psychology Ball State University
McGraw Hill Book Company

Comments:
This text has been used to help clarify Man’s information on ‘Counselors’ and ‘Psychology’.